

Math mode - v.2.33

Herbert Voß*

April 23, 2008

Abstract

It is often said that T_EX was designed for mathematical or technical purposes. This may be true when we remember the reasons why Donald Knuth created T_EX. But nowadays there are many examples in which T_EX is used for publications with no mathematical or technical background content. However, writing publications with such material is one of the important advantages of T_EX. Because it seems impossible to know all existing macros and options of (L^A)T_EX and the several additional packages, especially of $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math. This is the reason why I have attempted to gather all the relevant facts in this paper. An advanced german version of this paper is available as a book [25].

Please report typos or any other comments to this documentation to voss@perce.de.

This file can be redistributed and/or modified under the terms of the L^AT_EX Project Public License Distributed from CTAN archives in directory CTAN://macros/latex/base/lppl.txt.

*Thanks for the feedback to: Hendri Adriaens; Juan Mari Alberdi; Heiko Bauke; Neal Becker; Andrea Blomenhofer; Alexander Boronka; Walter Brown; Christian Faulhammer; José Luis Gómez Dans; Zongbao Fang; Sabine Glaser; Sven Gleich; Azzam Hassam; Gernot Hassenpflug; Henning Heinze; Martin Hensel; Mathias Hoffmann; Jon Kirwan; Morten Høgholm; M. Kalidoss; Dan Lasley; Angus Leeming; Vladimir Lomov; Tim Love; Dan Luecking; Hendrik Maryns; Heinz Mezera; David Neuway; Luis Trucco Passadore; Joachim Punter; Carl Riehm; Will Robertson; Christoph Rumsmüller; José Carlos Santos; Arnaud Schmittbuhl; Rainer Schöpf; Jens Schwaiger; Uwe Siart; Martin Sievers; Heiko Stamer; Uwe Stöhr; Carsten Thiel; Juan Luis Varona; David Weenink; Philipp Wook; Michael Zedler; Zou Yuan-Chuan; and last but not least a special thanks to Monika Hattenbach for her excellent job of proofreading.

Contents

	Page
I Standard \LaTeX math mode	10
1 Introduction	10
2 The Inlinemode	10
2.1 Limits	11
2.2 Fraction command	11
2.3 Math in Chapter/Section Titles	11
2.4 Equation numbering	12
2.5 Framed math	12
2.6 Linebreak	13
2.7 Whitespace	13
2.8 $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math for the inline mode	13
3 Displaymath mode	14
3.1 <code>equation</code> environment	14
3.2 <code>eqnarray</code> environment	15
3.2.1 Short commands	16
3.3 Equation numbering	16
3.3.1 Changing the style	17
3.3.2 Resetting a counter style	17
3.3.3 Equation numbers on the left side	17
3.3.4 Changing the equation number style	17
3.3.5 More than one equation counter	17
3.4 Labels	18
3.5 Frames	19
4 <code>array</code> environment	20
4.1 Cases structure	21
4.2 <code>arraycolsep</code>	22
5 Matrix	23
6 Super/Subscript and limits	25
6.1 Multiple limits	25
6.2 Problems	25
7 Roots	26

8 Brackets, braces ...	27
8.1 Examples	29
8.1.1 Braces over several lines	29
8.1.2 Middle bar	30
8.2 New delimiters	30
8.3 Problems with parentheses	30
9 Text in math mode	31
10 Font commands	32
10.1 Old-style font commands	32
10.2 New-style font commands	32
11 Space	32
11.1 Math typesetting	32
11.2 Additional horizontal spacing	33
11.3 Problems	34
11.4 Dot versus comma	35
11.5 Vertical whitespace	36
11.5.1 Before/after math expressions	36
11.5.2 Inside math expressions	37
12 Styles	39
13 Dots	40
14 Accents	40
14.1 Over- and underbrackets	41
14.1.1 Use of <code>\underbracket{...}</code>	42
14.1.2 Overbracket	42
14.2 Vectors	43
15 Exponents and indices	43
16 Operators	44
17 Greek letters	45
18 Pagebreaks	46
19 <code>\stackrel</code>	46
20 <code>\choose</code>	47
21 Color in math expressions	47

22 Boldmath	48
22.1 Bold math titles and items	49
23 Multiplying numbers	49
24 Other macros	50
II $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$math package	51
25 align environments	52
25.1 The default align environment	53
25.2 alignat environment	54
25.3 flalign environment	55
25.4 xalignat environment	56
25.5 xxalignat environment	57
25.6 aligned environment	57
25.7 Problems	57
26 Other environments	58
26.1 gather environment	58
26.2 gathered environment	58
26.3 multiline environment	60
26.3.1 Examples for multiline	62
26.4 split environment	63
26.5 cases environment	65
26.6 Matrix environments	66
27 Vertical whitespace	67
28 Dots	67
29 fraction commands	68
29.1 Standard	68
29.2 Binoms	69
30 Roots	70
30.1 Roots with \smash command	70
31 Accents	70
32 \mod command	71
33 Equation numbering	71
33.1 Subequations	72

34 Labels and tags	73
35 Limits	73
35.1 Multiple limits	74
35.2 Problems	74
35.3 <code>\sideset</code>	75
36 Operator names	76
37 Text in math mode	77
37.1 <code>\text</code> command	77
37.2 <code>\intertext</code> command	78
38 Extensible arrows	79
39 Frames	80
40 Greek letters	81
41 Miscellaneous commands	81
42 Problems with <code>amsmath</code>	82
III \TeX and math	84
43 Length registers	84
43.1 <code>\abovedisplayskip</code>	84
43.2 <code>\abovedisplayskip</code>	84
43.3 <code>\belowdisplayskip</code>	84
43.4 <code>\belowdisplayskip</code>	84
43.5 <code>\delimiterfactor</code>	84
43.6 <code>\delimitershortfall</code>	85
43.7 <code>\displayindent</code>	85
43.8 <code>\displaywidth</code>	86
43.9 <code>\mathsurround</code>	86
43.10 <code>\medmuskip</code>	86
43.11 <code>\mkern</code>	86
43.12 <code>\mskip</code>	86
43.13 <code>\muskip</code>	87
43.14 <code>\muskipdef</code>	87
43.15 <code>\nonscript</code>	87
43.16 <code>\nulldelimiterspace</code>	87
43.17 <code>\predisplaysize</code>	87
43.18 <code>\scriptspace</code>	87

43.19 \thickmuskip	87
43.20 \thinmuskip	87
43.21 \medmuskip	88
44 Math font macros	88
44.1 \delcode	88
44.2 \delimiter	88
44.3 \displaystyle	88
44.4 \fam	89
44.5 \mathaccent	89
44.6 \mathbin	89
44.7 \mathchar	89
44.8 \mathchardef	90
44.9 \mathchoice	90
44.10 \mathclose	90
44.11 \mathcode	90
44.12 \mathop	91
44.13 \mathopen	91
44.14 \mathord	91
44.15 \mathpunct	91
44.16 \mathrel	91
44.17 \scriptfont	91
44.18 \scriptscriptfont	91
44.19 \scriptscriptstyle	92
44.20 \scriptstyle	92
44.21 \skew	92
44.22 \skewchar	92
44.23 \textfont	92
44.24 \textstyle	92
45 Math macros	92
45.1 \above	92
45.2 \abovewithdelims	93
45.3 \atop	93
45.4 \atopwithdelims	93
45.5 \displaylimits	93
45.6 \eqno	94
45.7 \everydisplay	94
45.8 \everymath	94
45.9 \left	94
45.10 \leqno	94
45.11 \limits	95
45.12 \mathinner	95
45.13 \nolimits	95

45.14 <code>\over</code>	95
45.15 <code>\overline</code>	95
45.16 <code>\overwithdelims</code>	95
45.17 <code>\radical</code>	95
45.18 <code>\right</code>	96
45.19 <code>\underline</code>	96
45.20 <code>\vcenter</code>	96
46 Math penalties	96
46.1 <code>\binoppenalty</code>	96
46.2 <code>\displaywidowpenalty</code>	96
46.3 <code>\postdisplaypenalty</code>	97
46.4 <code>\predisplaypenalty</code>	97
46.5 <code>\relpenalty</code>	97
IV Other packages	98
47 List of available math packages	98
47.1 <code>accents</code>	98
47.2 <code>amscd</code> – commutative diagrams	99
47.3 <code>amsopn</code>	99
47.4 <code>bigdel</code>	99
47.5 <code>bm</code>	101
47.6 <code>braket</code>	101
47.7 <code>cancel</code>	102
47.8 <code>cool</code>	103
47.9 <code>delarray</code>	105
47.10 <code>dotseqn</code>	105
47.11 <code>empheq</code>	106
47.12 <code>esint</code>	107
47.13 <code>eucal</code> and <code>euscript</code>	108
47.14 <code>exscale</code>	108
47.15 <code>mathtools</code>	109
47.16 <code>nicefrac</code>	110
47.17 <code>relsize</code>	110
47.18 <code>xypic</code>	110
V Math fonts	112
48 Computer modern	112
49 Latin modern	112

50 Palatino	113
51 Palatino – microimp	113
52 cmbright	114
53 minion	114
 VI Special symbols	 115
54 Integral symbols	115
55 Harpoons	116
56 Bijective mapping arrow	117
57 Stacked equal sign	117
58 Other symbols	118
 VII Examples	 119
59 Tuning math typesetting	119
60 Matrix	120
60.1 Identity matrix	120
60.2 System of linear equations	120
60.3 Matrix with comments on top	121
61 Cases structure	121
61.1 Cases with numbered lines	121
62 Arrays	122
62.1 Quadratic equation	123
62.2 Vectors and matrices	124
62.3 Cases with (eqn)array environment	124
62.4 Arrays inside arrays	125
62.5 Colored cells	126
62.6 Boxed rows and columns	127
63 Over- and underbraces	128
63.1 Braces and roots	128
63.2 Overlapping braces	128
63.3 Vertical alignment	129

63.4 Alignment	130
64 Integrals	131
65 Horizontal alignment	131
65.1 Over more than one page	131
65.2 Special text columns	133
65.3 Centered vertical dots	135
66 Node connections	135
67 Special Placement	137
67.1 Formulas side by side	137
67.2 Itemize environment	139
68 Roots	140
 VIII Lists, bibliography and index	 142
List of Figures	143
List of Tables	144
Bibliography	145
Index	147
A Filelist	156

Part I

Standard L^AT_EX math mode

1 Introduction

The following sections describe all the math commands which are available without any additional package. Most of them also work with special packages and some of them are redefined. At first some important facts for typesetting math expressions.

2 The Inlinemode

As the name says there are always math expressions which are in a standard textline, like this one: $f(x) = \int_a^b \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$. There are no limitations for the height of the math expressions, so that the layout may be very lousy if you

insert a big matrix in an inline mode like this: $\underline{A} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{bmatrix}$. In this

case it is better to use the `\smallmatrix` environment $\underline{A} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{bmatrix}$ from the \mathcal{M} Smath package (see section 26.6 on page 66) or the displaymath mode (section 3 on page 14).

This inline mode is possible with three different commands:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{1}{2}n \cdot (n+1)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{1}{2}n \cdot (n+1)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{1}{2}n \cdot (n+1)$$

```

1 \(\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{1}{2}n \cdot (n+1)\)
   \[10pt]
2 $\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{1}{2}n \cdot (n+1)$
   $\[10pt]
3 \begin{math}
4   \sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{1}{2}n \cdot (n+1)
5 \end{math}

```

1. `\(... \)`, the problem is that `\(` is not a robust macro (see section 2.3 on the following page).

2. `$... $` `$...$`

3. `\begin{math} ... \end{math}`, also not robust `\begin{math}`

`...`

`\end{math}`

In general `$...$` is the best choice, but this does not work in environments like `verbatim` or `alltt`. In this case `\(...\)` works.

2.1 Limits

In the inline mode the limits are by default only in super or subscript mode and the fractions are always in the scriptstyle¹ font size. For example: $\int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1$, which is not too big for the textline. You can change this with the command `\limits`, which must follow a math operator² like an integral (`\int`), a sum (`\sum`), a product (`\prod`) or a limes (`\lim`). But this $\int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1$ (`\int\limits_1^\infty \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1`) does not look very nice in a text line when it appears between two lines, especially when there are multiline limits.³

2.2 Fraction command

For inlined formulas the fractions are by default in the scriptstyle (see tabular 8 on page 39), which is good for typesetting $y = \frac{a}{b+1}$, because the linespacing is nearly the same, but not optimal, when the formula shows some important facts. There are two solutions to get a better reading:

1. choose the display mode instead of the inline mode, which is the better one;
2. set the fontstyle to `\displaystyle`, which makes the fraction $y = \frac{a}{b+1}$ more readable but the linespacing increases which is always a bad solution and should only be used when the first solution makes no sense.⁴

$$y = \frac{a}{b+1} = \frac{a}{b+1} \quad \text{1} \quad \boxed{\$y=\frac{a}{b+1}=\{\displaystyle\frac{a}{b+1}\}\$}$$

2.3 Math in \part, \chapter, \section, ... titles like $f(x) = \prod_{i=1}^n (i - \frac{1}{2i})$

All commands which appear in positions like contents, index, header, ... must be robust⁵ which is the case for `...\$` but not for `\(...\)`. The latest package `fixltx2e` defines an macro for declaring existing commands to be robust. The package itself does this already for:

```
1 \MakeRobust\(  
2 \MakeRobust\  
3 \MakeRobust\[
```

¹See section 12 on page 39.

²To define a new operator see page 76

³For more information about limits see section 6.1 on page 25 or section 35 on page 73.

⁴For an abbreviation see section 29 on page 68, there is a special `\dfrac` macro.

⁵**robust** means that the macro is not expanded before it is moved into for example the `tableofcontents` file (`*.toc`). No robustness is often a problem, when a macro is part of another macro.

```

4 \MakeRobust\]
5 \MakeRobust\makebox
6 \MakeRobust\savebox
7 \MakeRobust\framebox
8 \MakeRobust\parbox
9 \MakeRobust\rule
10 \MakeRobust\raisebox

```

If you do not have any contents, index, a.s.o. you can write the math-stuff in `\chapter`, `\section`, a.s.o without any restriction. Otherwise use `\protect\` (and `\protect\`) or the `$...$` version.

The whole math expression appears in the default font shape and not in bold like the other text. Section 22.1 on page 49 describes how the math expressions can be printed also in bold.

`\texorpdfstring`

There are problems with the `hyperref` package when there is no text part in a title. It is possible with the command `\texorpdfstring` to tell `hyperref` to use different commands, one for the title and another one for the bookmarks:

`\texorpdfstring{<TeX part>}{<hyperref part>}`

```

1 \texorpdfstring{$\int f(x)\,dx$}{Integral function}

```

2.4 Equation numbering

It is obvious that the numbering of inline mathstuff makes no sense!

2.5 Framed math

With the `\fbox` macro everything of inline math can be framed, like the following one:

$$f(x) = \prod_{i=1}^n \left(i - \frac{1}{2i}\right)$$

```

1 \fbox{$f(x)=\prod_{i=1}^n\left(i-\frac{1}{2i}\right)$}

```

Parameters are the width of `\fboxsep` and `\fboxrule`, the predefined values from the file `latex.ltx` are:

```

1 \fboxsep = 3pt
2 \fboxrule = .4pt

```

The same is possible with the `\colorbox` $f(x) = \prod_{i=1}^n \left(i - \frac{1}{2i}\right)$ from the `color` package.

```

1 \colorbox{yellow}{$f(x)=\prod_{i=1}^n\left(i-\frac{1}{2i}\right)$}

```

2.6 Linebreak

L^AT_EX can break an inline formula only when a relation symbol ($=, <, >, \dots$) or a binary operation symbol ($+, -, \dots$) exists and at least one of these symbols appears at the outer level of a formula. Thus $\$a+b+c\$$ can be broken across lines, but $\$\{a+b+c\}\$$ not.

- The default: $f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + a_{n-2} x^{n-2} + \dots + a_i x^i + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x^1 + a_0$
- The same inside a group $\{\dots\}$: $f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + a_{n-2} x^{n-2} + \dots + a_i x^i + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x^1 + a_0$
- Without any symbol: $f(x) = a_n (a_{n-1} (a_{n-2} (\dots) \dots) \dots)$

If it is not possible to have any mathsymbol, then split the inline formula in two or more pieces ($\$ \dots \$ \$ \dots \$$). If you do not want a linebreak for the whole document, you can set in the preamble:

```
\relpenalty=9999
\binoppenalty=9999
```

which is the extreme case of grudgingly allowing breaks in extreme cases, or

```
\relpenalty=10000
\binoppenalty=10000
```

for absolutely no breaks.

2.7 Whitespace

L^AT_EX defines the length `\mathsurround` with the default value of `0pt`. This length is added before and after an inlined math expression (see table 1).

foo	$f(x) = \int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1$	bar	1	<code>foo \fbox{\$ f(x)=\int_1^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\, , \mathrm{d}x=1 \$} bar</code>
foo	$f(x) = \int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1$	bar	1	<code>foo \rule{20pt}{\ht\strutbox}\fbox{\$ f(x)=\int_1^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\, , \mathrm{d}x=1 \$}\rule{20pt}{\ht\strutbox} bar</code>
foo	$f(x) = \int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1$	bar	1 2	<code>\setlength{\mathsurround}{20pt} foo \fbox{\$ f(x)=\int_1^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\, , \mathrm{d}x=1 \$} bar</code>

Table 1: Meaning of `\mathsurround`

2.8 $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math for the inline mode

None of the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math-functions are available in inline mode.

3 Displaymath mode

This means, that every formula gets its own paragraph (line). There are some differences in the layout to the one from the title of 2.3.

3.1 equation environment

For example:

$$f(x) = \prod_{i=1}^n \left(i - \frac{1}{2i} \right) \quad (1)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2   f(x) = \prod_{i=1}^n \left( i - \frac{1}{2i} \right)
3 \end{equation}

```

The delimiters `\begin{equation}` ... `\end{equation}` are the only difference to the inline version. There are some equivalent commands for the display-math mode:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <code>\begin{displaymath}...\end{displaymath}</code>, same as <code>\[... \]</code> 2. <code>\[...\]</code>. (see above) the short form of a displayed formula, no number | <pre> \begin{displaymath} ... \end{displaymath} </pre> |
|--|--|

$$f(x) = \prod_{i=1}^n \left(i - \frac{1}{2i} \right)$$

displayed, no number. Same as 1.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. <code>\begin{equation}...\end{equation}</code> | <pre> \begin{equation} ... \end{equation} </pre> |
|---|--|
- $$f(x) = \prod_{i=1}^n \left(i - \frac{1}{2i} \right) \quad (2)$$

displayed, a sequential equation number, which may be reset when starting a new chapter or section.

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) There is only one equation number for the whole environment. (b) There exists no star-version of the equation environment because <code>\[...\]</code> is the equivalent. With the tag <code>\nonumber</code> it is possible to suppress the equation number: | <pre> \nonumber </pre> |
|---|------------------------|

$$f(x) = [...]$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2   f(x) = [...] \nonumber
3 \end{equation}

```

3.2 eqnarray environment

This is by default an array with three columns and as many rows as you like. It is nearly the same as an array with a `rcl` column definition.

It is **not possible** to change the internal behaviour of the `eqnarray` environment without rewriting the environment. It is always an implicit array with **three** columns and the horizontal alignment **right-center-left** (`rcl`) and small **symbol** sizes for the middle column. All this can not be changed by the user without rewriting the whole environment in `latex.ltx`.

```
\begin{eqnarray}
...
\end{eqnarray}
```

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{left} & \text{middle} & \text{right} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} = & \frac{\sqrt{n}}{n} = & \frac{n}{n\sqrt{n}} \end{array}$$

```
1 \begin{eqnarray*}
2 \mathrm{left} & \mathrm{middle} & \mathrm{right} \\
3 \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} = & \frac{\sqrt{n}}{n} = & \frac{n}{n\sqrt{n}} \\
4 \end{eqnarray*}
```

The `eqnarray` environment should not be used as an array. As seen in the above example the typesetting is wrong for the middle column. The numbering of `eqnarray` environments is always for every row, means, that four lines get four different equation numbers (for the labels see section 3.4 on page 18):

$$\begin{array}{rcl} y & = & d \\ y & = & cx + d \\ y & = & bx^2 + cx + d \\ y & = & ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} (3) \\ (4) \\ (5) \\ (6) \end{array}$$

```
1 \begin{eqnarray}
2 y & = & d \label{eq:2} \\
3 y & = & cx + d \\
4 y & = & bx^2 + cx + d \\
5 y & = & ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \label{eq:5} \\
6 \end{eqnarray}
```

Toggling numbering off/on for **all** rows is possible with the starred version of `eqnarray`.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} y & = & d \\ y & = & cx + d \\ y & = & bx^2 + cx + d \\ y & = & ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \end{array}$$

```
1 \begin{eqnarray*}
2 y & = & d \label{eq:3} \\
3 y & = & cx + d \\
4 y & = & bx^2 + cx + d \\
5 y & = & ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \label{eq:4} \\
6 \end{eqnarray*}
```

Toggling off/on for **single** rows is possible with the above mentioned `\nonumber` tag at the end of a row (before the newline command). For example:

$$\begin{aligned}
 y &= d \\
 y &= cx + d \\
 y &= bx^2 + cx + d \\
 y &= ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \quad (7)
 \end{aligned}$$

```

1 \begin{eqnarray}
2   y &= & d \nonumber \\
3   y &= & cx+d \nonumber \\
4   y &= & bx^{\{2\}}+cx+d \nonumber \\
5   y &= & ax^{\{3\}}+bx^{\{2\}}+cx+d \\
6 \end{eqnarray}

```

3.2.1 Short commands

It is possible to define short commands for the `eqnarray` environment

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \newcommand{\be}{%
3   \begin{group}
4   % \setlength{\arraycolsep}{2pt}
5   \eqnarray%
6   \@ifstar{\nonumber}{}%
7 }
8 \newcommand{\ee}{\endeqnarray\endgroup}
9 \makeatother

```

Now you can write the whole equation as

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx \quad (8)$$

```

1 \be
2   f(x) &= & \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx, \mathrm{d}x
3 \ee

```

or, if you do not want to have a numbered equation as

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$$

```

1 \be*
2   f(x) &= & \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx, \mathrm{d}x
3 \ee

```

3.3 Equation numbering

For all equations which can have one or more equation numbers (for every `\nonumber` line/row) the numbering for the whole equation can be disabled with switching from the unstarred to the star version. This is still for the whole formula and doesn't work for single rows. In this case use the `\nonumber` tag.

- This doc is written with the `article`-class, which counts the equations continuously over all parts/sections. You can change this behaviour in different ways (see the following subsections).
- In standard `LATEX` it is a problem with too long equations and the equation number, which may be printed with the equation one upon the other. In this case use the `AMSmath` package, where the number is set above or below of a too long equation (see equation 28 on page 29).
- For counting subequations see section 33.1 on page 72.

3.3.1 Changing the style

With the beginning of Section 25.2 on page 54 the counting changes from “44” into the new style “II-51”. The command sequence is

```
1 \renewcommand\theequation{\thepart-\arabic{equation}}
```

`\theequation`

See section 33 on page 71 for the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math command.

3.3.2 Resetting a counter style

Removing a given reset is possible with the `remreset`.⁶ Write into the preamble

```
1 \makeatletter
2 \@removefromreset{equation}{section}
3 \makeatother
```

`\@removefromreset`

or anywhere in the text.

Now the equation counter is no longer reset when a new section starts. You can see this after section 26.4 on page 63.

3.3.3 Equation numbers on the left side

Choose package `leqno`⁷ or have a look at your document class, if such an option exists.

3.3.4 Changing the equation number style

The number style can be changed with a redefinition of

```
\def\@eqnnum{\normalfont \normalcolor (\theequation)}
```

For example: if you want the numbers not in parentheses write

```
1 \makeatletter
2 \def\@eqnnum{\normalfont \normalcolor \theequation}
3 \makeatother
```

For $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math there is another macro, see section 33 on page 71.

3.3.5 More than one equation counter

You can have more than the default equation counter. With the following code you can easily toggle between roman and arabic equation counting.

⁶CTAN://macros/latex/contrib/supported/carlsle/remreset.sty

⁷CTAN://macros/latex/unpacked/leqno.sty

```

1 %code by Heiko Oberdiek
2 \makeatletter
3 %Roman counter
4 \newcounter{roem}
5 \renewcommand{\theroem}{\roman{roem}}
6
7 % save the original counter
8 \newcommand{\c@org@eq}{}
9 \let\c@org@eq\c@equation
10 \newcommand{\org@theeq}{}
11 \let\org@theeq\theequation
12
13 %\setroem sets roman counting
14 \newcommand{\setroem}{
15   \let\c@equation\c@roem
16   \let\theequation\theroem}
17
18 %\setarab the arabic counting
19 \newcommand{\setarab}{
20   \let\c@equation\c@org@eq
21   \let\theequation\org@theeq}
22 \makeatother

```

The following examples show how it works:

$$f(x) = \int \sin x \, dx \quad (9)$$

$$g(x) = \int \frac{1}{x} \, dx \quad (10)$$

$$F(x) = -\cos x \quad (\text{i})$$

$$G(x) = \ln x \quad (\text{ii})$$

$$f'(x) = \sin x \quad (11)$$

$$g'(x) = \frac{1}{x} \quad (12)$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 f(x) &= \int \sin x \, dx \label{eq:
   arab1} \\
3 g(x) &= \int \frac{1}{x} \, dx \\
4 \end{align}
5 %
6 \setroem
7 %
8 \begin{align}
9 F(x) &= -\cos x \\
10 G(x) &= \ln x \label{eq:rom1} \\
11 \end{align}
12 %
13 \setarab
14 %
15 \begin{align}
16 f^{\prime}(x) &= \sin x \\
17 g^{\prime}(x) &= \frac{1}{x} \label{eq:
   arab2} \\
18 \end{align}

```

There can be references to these equations in the usual way, like eq.9, 12 and for the roman one eq.ii.

3.4 Labels

Every numbered equation can have a label to which a reference is possible.

- There is one restriction for the label names, they cannot include one of L^AT_EX's command characters.⁸
- The label names are replaced by the equation number.

If you do not want a reference to the equation number but to a self defined name then use the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math command `\tag{...}`, which is described in section 34 on page 73.

`\tag`

3.5 Frames

Similar to the inline mode, displayed equations can also be framed with the `\fbox` command, like equation 13. The only difference is the fact, that the equation must be packed into a parbox or minipage. It is nearly the same for a colored box, where the `\fbox{...}` has to be replaced with `\colorbox{yellow}{...}`. The package `color.sty` must be loaded and –important – the `calc` package to get a correct boxwidth.

$$f(x) = \int_1^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1 \quad (13)$$

```

1 \noindent\fbox{\parbox{\linewidth-2\fboxsep-2\fboxrule}{%
2 \begin{equation}\label{eq:frame0}
3   f(x)=\int_1^{\infty}\dfrac{1}{x^2}\, ,\,\mathrm{d}x=1
4 \end{equation}%
5 }}
```

If the equation number should not be part of the frame, then it is a bit complicated. There is one tricky solution, which puts an unnumbered equation just beside an empty numbered equation. The `\hfill` is only useful for placing the equation number right aligned, which is not the default. The following four equations 14-17 are the same, only the second one written with the `\myMathBox` macro which has the border and background color as optional arguments with the defaults `white` for background and `black` for the frame. If there is only one optional argument, then it is still the one for the frame color (15).

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \def\myMathBox{\@ifnextchar[{\my@MBoxi}{\my@MBoxi[black]}}
3 \def\my@MBoxi[#1]{\@ifnextchar[{\my@MBoxii[#1]}{\my@MBoxii
4   [#1][white]}}
5 \def\my@MBoxii[#1][#2]#3#4{%
6   \par\noindent%
7   \fcolorbox{#1}{#2}{%
8     \parbox{\linewidth-\labelwidth-2\fboxrule-2\fboxsep}{#3}
9   }%
10 }
```

⁸`\$ _ ^ \ & \% { }`

```

9      \parbox{\labelwidth}{%
10         \begin{eqnarray}\label{#4}\end{eqnarray}%
11      }%
12      \par%
13  }
14  \makeatother

```

$$f(x) = x^2 + x \quad (14)$$

$$f(x) = x^2 + x \quad (15)$$

$$f(x) = x^2 + x \quad (16)$$

$$f(x) = x^2 + x \quad (17)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}\label{eq:frame2}
2     f(x)=x^2 +x
3 \end{equation}
4 \myMathBox[red]{\left[f(x)=x^2 +x\right]}{eq:frame3}
5 \myMathBox[red][yellow]{\left[f(x)=x^2 +x\right]}{eq:frame4}
6 \myMathBox{\left[f(x)=x^2 +x\right]}{eq:frame5}

```

If you are using the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package, then try the solutions from [section 39 on page 80](#).

4 array environment

This is simply the same as the `eqnarray` environment only with the possibility of variable rows **and** columns and the fact, that the whole formula has only **one** equation number and that the `array` environment can only be part of another math environment, like the `equation` environment or the `displaymath` environment. With `@{}` before the first and after the last column the additional space `\arraycolsep` is not used, which maybe important when using left aligned equations.

```
\begin{array}
...
\end{array}
```

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll} \text{a) } y = & c \quad (\text{constant}) \\ \text{b) } y = & cx + d \quad (\text{linear}) \\ \text{c) } y = & bx^2 + cx + d \quad (\text{square}) \\ \text{d) } y = & ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \quad (\text{cubic}) \end{array} \right\} \text{Polynomes} \quad (18)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \left. \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \right|_{\text{trm}\{a\}} & y & = & c & (\text{constant}) \\
3 \end{equation}
4 
```

```

5 \textrm{b}) & y & = & cx+d & (linear)\&
6 \textrm{c}) & y & = & bx^{2}+cx+d & (square)\&
7 \textrm{d}) & y & = & ax^{3}+bx^{2}+cx+d & (cubic)
8 \end{array}%
9 \right\} \text{Polynomes}
10 \end{equation}

```

The horizontal alignment of the columns is the same as the one from the `tabular` environment.

For arrays with delimiters see section 47.9 on page 105.

4.1 Cases structure

If you do not want to use the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package then write your own cases structure with the `array` environment:

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 x=\left\{ \begin{array}{cl}
3 0 & \text{if } A=\ldots\\
4 1 & \text{if } B=\ldots\\
5 x & \text{this runs with as much text as you like, but without an} \\
& \text{raggeright text.}\end{array}\right.
6 \end{equation}

```

$$x = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } A = \dots \\ 1 & \text{if } B = \dots \\ x & \text{this runs with as much text as you like, but without an raggeright text.} \end{cases} \quad (19)$$

It is obvious, that we need a `\parbox` if the text is longer than the possible linewidth.

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 x = \left\{ \begin{array}{l}
3   \begin{array}{l}
4     0 \text{ \& if } \$A=\ldots\$ \tabularnewline
5     1 \text{ \& if } \$B=\ldots\$ \tabularnewline
6     x \text{ \& } \parbox{0.5\columnwidth}{this runs with as much text as you like}
7     , \\
8     because an automatic linebreak is given with \\
9     a raggedright text. Without this \\
10    \raggedright command, you'll get a formatted \\
11    text like the following one ... but with a parbox ... it works}
12   \end{array} \\
13 \end{array} \right.

```

$$x = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 0 \text{ if } A = \dots \\ 1 \text{ if } B = \dots \\ \text{this runs with as much text as you} \\ \text{like, because an automatic linebreak is} \\ \text{given with a raggedright text.} \\ x \text{ Without this command, you'll get a} \\ \text{formatted text like the following one} \\ \text{... but with a parbox ... it works} \end{array} \right. \quad (20)$$

4.2 arraycolsep

\arraycolsep

All the foregoing math environments use the array to typeset the math expression. The predefined separation between two columns is the length `\arraycolsep`, which is set by nearly all document classes to 5pt, which seems to be too big. The following equation is typeset with the default value and the second one with `\arraycolsep=1.4pt`

$$\boxed{f(x)} \quad \boxed{=} \quad \boxed{\int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx}$$

$$\boxed{f(x)} \quad \boxed{=} \quad \boxed{\int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx}$$

If this modification should be valid for all arrays/equations, then write it into the preamble, otherwise put it into a group or define your own environment as done in section 3.2.1 on page 16.

```

1 \bgroup
2 \arraycolsep=1.4pt
3 \begin{eqnarray}
4 f(x) \text{ \& } = \text{ \& } \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx, \text{ \& } \mathrm{d}x
5 \end{eqnarray}
6 \egroup

```

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \newcommand{\be}{%
3   \begin{group}
4   \setlength{\arraycolsep}{1.4pt}
5   [ ... ]

```

5 Matrix

T_EX knows two macros and L^AT_EX one more for typesetting a matrix:

$$\begin{matrix} A & B & C \\ d & e & f \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{matrix}$$

```

1 $\begin{matrix}
2   A & B & C \\
3   d & e & f \\
4   1 & 2 & 3 \\
5 \end{matrix}$

```

```

\begin{matrix}
...
\end{matrix}
\bordermatrix

```

$$\begin{matrix} & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & A & B & C \\ 1 & d & e & f \\ 2 & 1 & 2 & 3 \end{matrix}$$

```

1 $\bordermatrix{
2   & 0 & 1 & 2 \\
3   0 & A & B & C \\
4   1 & d & e & f \\
5   2 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\
6 }$

```

The first two macros are listed here for some historical reason, because the `array` environment or especially the `AMSmath` package offers the same or better macros/environments. Nevertheless it is possible to redefine the `\bordermatrix` macro to get other parentheses and a star version which takes the left top part as matrix:

$$\begin{matrix} & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & x1 & x2 \\ 2 & x3 & x4 \\ 3 & x5 & x6 \end{matrix}$$

```

1 $\bordermatrix{
2   & 1 & 2 \\
3   1 & x1 & x2 \\
4   2 & x3 & x4 \\
5   3 & x5 & x6 \\
6 }$

```

$$\begin{matrix} & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & [x1 & x2] \\ 2 & [x3 & x4] \\ 3 & [x5 & x6] \end{matrix}$$

```

1 $\bordermatrix[{}]{
2   & 1 & 2 \\
3   1 & x1 & x2 \\
4   2 & x3 & x4 \\
5   3 & x5 & x6 \\
6 }$

```

$$\begin{matrix} & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & \{x1 & x2\} \\ 2 & \{x3 & x4\} \\ 3 & \{x5 & x6\} \end{matrix}$$

```

1 $\bordermatrix[\{\}]{
2   & 1 & 2 \\
3   1 & x1 & x2 \\
4   2 & x3 & x4 \\
5   3 & x5 & x6 \\
6 }$

```

$$\begin{pmatrix} x1 & x2 \\ x3 & x4 \\ x5 & x6 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} x1 & x2 \\ x3 & x4 \\ x5 & x6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{matrix}$$

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} x1 & x2 \\ x3 & x4 \\ x5 & x6 \end{matrix} \right\} \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{matrix}$$

```
1 $\bordermatrix*{%
2 x1 & x2 & 1 \cr
3 x3 & x4 & 2 \cr
4 x5 & x6 & 3 \cr
5 1 & 2
6 }$
```

```
1 $\bordermatrix*{[[]]}{%
2 x1 & x2 & 1 \cr
3 x3 & x4 & 2 \cr
4 x5 & x6 & 3 \cr
5 1 & 2
6 }$
```

```
1 $\bordermatrix*{\{\}}{%
2 x1 & x2 & 1 \cr
3 x3 & x4 & 2 \cr
4 x5 & x6 & 3 \cr
5 1 & 2
6 }$
```

There is now an optional argument for the parenthesis with () as the default one. To get such a behaviour, write into the preamble:

```
1 \makeatletter
2 \newif\if@borderstar
3 \def\bordermatrix{\@ifnextchar*{%
4   \@borderstartrue\@bordermatrix@i}\@borderstarfalse\@bordermatrix@i
5   *}%
6 }
7 \def\@bordermatrix@i*{\@ifnextchar[{\@bordermatrix@ii}\@bordermatrix@ii[()]}%
8 \def\@bordermatrix@ii[#1]#2{%
9   \begingroup
10    \m@th\@tempdima8.75\p@\setbox\z@\vbox{%
11      \def\cr{\crr\noalign{\kern 2\p@\global\let\cr\endline}}%
12      \ialign {###$\hfil\kern 2\p@\kern\@tempdima & \thinspace %
13        \hfil $$$\hfil && \quad\hfil $$$\hfil\crr\omit\strut %
14        \hfil\crr\noalign{\kern -\baselineskip}#2\crr\omit %
15        \strut\cr}}%
16    \setbox\tw@\vbox{\unvcopy\z@\global\setbox\@ne\lastbox}%
17    \setbox\tw@\hbox{\unhbox\@ne\unskip\global\setbox\@ne\lastbox}%
18    \setbox\tw@\hbox{%
19      $\kern\wd\@ne\kern -\@tempdima\left\@firstoftwo#1%
20      \if@borderstar\kern2pt\else\kern -\wd\@ne\fi%
21      \global\setbox\@ne\vbox{\box\@ne\if@borderstar\else\kern 2\p@\fi}%
22      \vcenter{\if@borderstar\else\kern -\ht\@ne\fi%
23        \unvbox\z@\kern-\if@borderstar2\fi\baselineskip}%
24        \if@borderstar\kern-2\@tempdima\kern2\p@\else\,\fi\right\
25        @secondoftwo#1 $%
26      }\null \; \vbox{\kern\ht\@ne\box\tw@}%
27    \endgroup
28 }
29 \makeatother
```


The `matrix` environment macro cannot be used together with the `\mathcal{M}` package, it redefines this environment (see section 26.6 on page 66).

6 Super/Subscript and limits

Writing a_{min} and a_{max} gives the same depth for the subscript, but writing them in upright mode with `\mbox` gives a different depth: a_{\min} and a_{\max} . The problem is the different height, which can be modified in several ways

- `\a_{\mbox{\vphantom{i}}max}`: a_{\min} and a_{\max} ;
- `\a_{\mathrm{max}}`: a_{\min} and a_{\max} ;
- `\a_{\max}`: a_{\min} and a_{\max} . Both are predefined operators (see section 16 on page 44).

6.1 Multiple limits

For general information about limits read section 2.1 on page 11. With the `\TeX` command `\atop` multiple limits for a `\sum` or `\prod` are possible. The syntax is:

above
below

```
\[ {above \atop below} \]
```

which is nearly the same as a fraction without a rule. This can be enhanced to `a\atop b\atop c` and so on. For equation 21 do the following steps:

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq p \\ 1 \leq i \leq q \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki} \quad (21)$$

```
\begin{equation}\label{eq:atop}
\sum_{\{1\le j\le p\atop \{
\{1\le j\le q\atop 1\le k\le r\}\}}
\}a_{ij}b_{jk}c_{ki}
\end{equation}
```

which is not the best solution because the space between the lines is too big. The `\mathcal{M}` package provides several commands for limits (section 35 on page 73) and the `\underset` and `\overset` commands (see section 41 on page 81).

6.2 Problems

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq p \\ 1 \leq i \leq q \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki} \quad (22)$$

The equation 22 shows that the horizontal alignment is not optimal, because the math expression on the right follows at the end of the limits

which are a unit together with the sum symbol. There is an elegant solution with $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\mathcal{m}\mathcal{a}\mathcal{t}\mathcal{h}$, described in subsection 35.2 on page 74. If you do not want to use $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\mathcal{m}\mathcal{a}\mathcal{t}\mathcal{h}$, then use `\makebox`. But there is a problem when the general fontsize is increased, `\makebox` knows nothing about the actual math font size. Equation 23a shows the effect and equation 23b the view without the boxes.

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq p \\ 1 \leq j \leq q \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki} \quad (23a)$$

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq p \\ 1 \leq j \leq q \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki} \quad (23b)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \sum_{\makebox[0pt]{$%
3   {\scriptscriptstyle 1\leq j\leq p\atop {%
4     {1\leq j\leq q\atop {1\leq k\leq r}}}%
5   $}}a_{ij}b_{jk}c_{ki}}
6 \end{equation}
```

7 Roots

The square root `\sqrt` is the default for \LaTeX and the n -th root can be inserted with the optional parameter `\sqrt[n]{...}`. .

`\sqrt`

$$\sqrt{x} \quad \sqrt[3]{x}$$

There is a different typesetting in roots. Equation 24 has different heights for the roots, whereas equation 25 has the same one. This is possible with the `\vphantom` command, which reserves the vertical space (without a horizontal one) of the parameter height.

$$\sqrt{a} \sqrt{T} \sqrt{2\alpha_{B_1} T^i} \quad (24)$$

$$\sqrt{a} \sqrt{T} \sqrt{2\alpha_{B_1} T^i} \quad (25)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \sqrt{a}\sqrt{T}\sqrt{2\alpha_{B_1}T^i}
3 \sqrt{2\alpha_{B_1}T^i}\label{eq:root1}
4 \end{equation}
```

```

1 \begin{equation}\label{eq:root2}
2 \sqrt{a\vphantom{k_{B_1}T^i}}\sqrt{T\vphantom{k_{B_1}T^i}}\sqrt{2\alpha_{B_1}T^i}
3 \sqrt{2\alpha_{B_1}T^i}
4 \end{equation}
```

The typesetting looks much better, especially when the formula has different roots in a row, like equation 24. Using $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\mathcal{m}\mathcal{a}\mathcal{t}\mathcal{h}$ with the `\smash` command⁹ gives some more possibilities for the typesetting of roots (see section 30 on page 70).

⁹The `\smash` command exists also in \LaTeX but without an optional argument, which makes the use for roots possible.

8 Brackets, braces and parentheses

This is one of the major problems inside the math mode, because there is often a need for different brackets, braces and parentheses in different size. At first we had to admit, that there is a difference between the characters “() [] \{ } | || \sqcup \sqcap \langle \rangle \upuparrows \downdownarrows \Updownarrow” and their use as an argument of the `\left` and `\right` command, where \LaTeX stretches the size in a way that everything between the pair of left and right parentheses is smaller than the parentheses themselves. In some cases¹⁰ it may be useful to choose a fixed height, which is possible with the `\big`-series. Instead of writing `\leftX` or `\rightX` one of the following commands can be chosen:

default	$()[]\{\}\ \sqcup\sqcap\langle\rangle\upuparrows\downdownarrows\Updownarrow$	<code>\leftX</code> <code>\rightX</code>
<code>\bigX</code>	$()\square/\wedge\{\}\ \sqcup\sqcap\langle\rangle\upuparrows\downdownarrows\Updownarrow$	<code>\bigX</code> <code>\BigX</code> <code>\biggX</code> <code>\BiggX</code>
<code>\BigX</code>	$()\square/\wedge\{\}\ \sqcup\sqcap\langle\rangle\upuparrows\downdownarrows\Updownarrow$	
<code>\biggX</code>	$()\square/\wedge\{\}\ \sqcup\sqcap\langle\rangle\upuparrows\downdownarrows\Updownarrow$	
<code>\BiggX</code>	$()\square/\wedge\{\}\ \sqcup\sqcap\langle\rangle\upuparrows\downdownarrows\Updownarrow$	

Only a few commands can be written in a short form like `\big(`. The “X” has to be replaced with one of the following characters or commands from table 3 on the next page, which shows the parentheses character, its code for the use with one of the “big” commands and an example with the code for that.

For all commands there exists a left/right version `\bigl`, `\bigr`, `\Bigl` and so on, which only makes sense when writing things like:

$$\left) \times \frac{a}{b} \times \left(\quad (26)$$

$$\right) \times \frac{a}{b} \times \left(\quad (27)$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2   \bigl)\times \frac{a}{b} \times \biggr(
3 \end{align}
4 \begin{align}
5   \bigg)\times \frac{a}{b} \times \bigg(
6 \end{align}

```

\LaTeX takes the `\biggl` as a mathopen symbol, which has by default another horizontal spacing.

In addition to the above commands there exist some more: `\bigm`, `\Bigm`, `\biggm` and `\Biggm`, which work as the standard ones (without the additional “m”) but add some more horizontal space between the delimiter and the formula before and after (see table 2 on the following page).

¹⁰See section 8.1.1 on page 29 for example.

Table 2: Difference between the default `\bigg` and the `\biggm` command

$$\left(\frac{1}{3}\middle|\frac{3}{4}\right)$$

$$\left(\frac{1}{3}\middle|\frac{3}{4}\right)$$

```
$\bigg(\displaystyle\frac{1}{3}\backslash$  
biggm\frac{3}{4}\bigg)$
```

```
$\bigg(\displaystyle\frac{1}{3}\backslash$  
biggm\frac{3}{4}\bigg)$
```

Table 3: Use of the different parentheses for the “big” commands

Char	Code	Example	Code
()	()	$3(a^2 + b^{c^2})$	<code>3\Big(a^2+b^{c^2}\Big)</code>
[]	[]	$3[a^2 + b^{c^2}]$	<code>3\Big[a^2+b^{c^2}\Big]</code>
/ \	<code>/\backslash</code>	$3/a^2 + b^{c^2}\backslash$	<code>3\Big/</code> <code>a^2+b^{c^2}\Big\backslash</code>
{ }	<code>\{\}</code>	$3\{a^2 + b^{c^2}\}$	<code>3\Big\{ a^2+b^{c^2}\Big\}</code>
	<code> \Vert</code>	$3 a^2 + b^{c^2} $	<code>3\Big a^2+b^{c^2}\Big\Vert</code>
⌊ ⌋	<code>\lfloor</code> <code>\rfloor</code>	$3\lfloor a^2 + b^{c^2} \rfloor$	<code>3\Big\lfloor a^2+b^{c^2}</code> <code>\Big\rfloor</code>
⌈ ⌉	<code>\lceil</code> <code>\rceil</code>	$3\lceil a^2 + b^{c^2} \rceil$	<code>3\Big\lceil a^2+b^{c^2}</code> <code>\Big\rceil</code>
⟨ ⟩	<code>\langle</code> <code>\rangle</code>	$3\langle a^2 + b^{c^2} \rangle$	<code>3\Big\langle a^2+b^{c^2}\Big\rangle</code>
↑ ↑	<code>\uparrow</code> <code>\Uparrow</code>	$3\uparrow a^2 + b^{c^2}\uparrow$	<code>3\Big\uparrow a^2+b^{c^2}</code> <code>\Big\Uparrow</code>
↓ ↓	<code>\downarrow</code> <code>\Downarrow</code>	$3\downarrow a^2 + b^{c^2}\downarrow$	<code>3\Big\downarrow a^2+b^{c^2}</code> <code>\Big\Downarrow</code>
↕ ↕	<code>\updownarrow</code> <code>\Updownarrow</code>	$3\updownarrow a^2 + b^{c^2}\updownarrow$	<code>3\Big\updownarrow a^2+b^{c^2}</code> <code>\Big\Updownarrow</code>

8.1 Examples

8.1.1 Braces over several lines

The following equation in the single line mode looks like

$$\frac{1}{2}\Delta(f_{ij}f^{ij}) = 2 \left(\sum_{i<j} \chi_{ij}(\sigma_i - \sigma_j)^2 + f^{ij}\nabla_j\nabla_i(\Delta f) + \nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij} + f^{ij}f^k[2\nabla_i R_{jk} - \nabla_k R_{ij}] \right) \quad (28)$$

and is too long for the text width and the equation number has to be placed under the equation.¹¹ With the array environment the formula can be split in two smaller pieces:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\Delta(f_{ij}f^{ij}) = 2 \left(\sum_{i<j} \chi_{ij}(\sigma_i - \sigma_j)^2 + f^{ij}\nabla_j\nabla_i(\Delta f) + \right. \\ \left. + \nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij} + f^{ij}f^k[2\nabla_i R_{jk} - \nabla_k R_{ij}] \right) \end{aligned} \quad (29)$$

It is obvious that there is a problem with the right closing parentheses. Because of the two pairs “\left(... \right)” and “\left. ... \right)” they have a different size because every pair does it in its own way. Using the Bigg command changes this into a better typesetting:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\Delta(f_{ij}f^{ij}) = 2 \left(\sum_{i<j} \chi_{ij}(\sigma_i - \sigma_j)^2 + f^{ij}\nabla_j\nabla_i(\Delta f) + \right. \\ \left. + \nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij} + f^{ij}f^k[2\nabla_i R_{jk} - \nabla_k R_{ij}] \right) \end{aligned} \quad (30)$$

```

1 {\arraycolsep=2pt
2 \begin{equation}
3 \begin{array}{rcl}
4 \quad \frac{1}{2}\Delta(f_{ij}f^{ij}) & = & 2\Bigg(\{\\
5 \quad \quad \sum_{i<j}\chi_{ij}(\sigma_i-\sigma_j)^2+f^{ij}%
6 \quad \quad \nabla_j\nabla_i(\Delta f)+\\
7 & & +\nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij}+f^{ij}f^k[2\nabla_i R_{jk}-\nabla_k R_{ij}]\Bigg)
8 \quad \quad \nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij}+f^{ij}f^k[2\nabla_i R_{jk}-\nabla_k R_{ij}]\Bigg)
9 \end{array}
10 \end{equation}
11 }
```

Section 26.3.1 on page 62 shows another solution for getting the right size for parentheses when breaking the equation in smaller pieces.

¹¹In standard L^AT_EX the equation and the number are printed one over the other for too long formulas. Only $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math puts it one line over (left numbers) or under (right numbers) the formula.

$$B(r, \phi, \lambda) = \frac{\mu}{r} \left[\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \left(\left(\frac{R_e}{r} \right)^n J_n P_n(s\phi) \right. \right. \\ \left. \left. + \sum_{m=1}^n \left(\frac{R_e}{r} \right)^n (C_{nm} \cos m\lambda + S_{nm} \sin m\lambda) P_{nm}(s\phi) \right) \right]$$

```

1 \begin{align*}
2 B(r,\phi,\lambda) = & \frac{\mu}{r} \\
3 & \Bigg[\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \Bigg( \left( \frac{R_e}{r} \right)^n J_n P_n(s\phi) \\
4 & + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{R_e}{r} \right)^n \\
5 & (C_{nm}\cos m\lambda + S_{nm}\sin m\lambda)P_{nm}(s\phi) \Bigg] \\
6 \end{align*}

```

See section 47.6 on page 101 for examples and the use of package `braket`.

The default delimiters are defined in the file `fontmath.ltx` which is stored in general in `[TEXMF]/tex/latex/base/fontmath.ltx`. If we need for example a thicker vertical symbol than the existing `\vert` symbol we can define in the preamble:

```
1 \DeclareMathDelimiter{\Norm}
2 {\mathord}{largesymbols}{"3E}{largesymbols}{"3E}
```

$\left *BLA* \right $	1	<code>\left\ Norm *BLA* \right\ Norm</code>
$\left \frac{*BLA*}{*BLUB*} \right $	2	
	3	<code>\left\ Norm \dfrac{*BLA*}{*BLUB*} \right\ Norm</code>

```
\delimitershortfall
\delimiterfactor
```

$$\int_{\gamma} F'(z) dz = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} F'(\gamma(t)) \cdot \gamma'(t) dt$$

The problem is that \TeX controls the height of the parenthesis with $\text{\delimitershortfall}$ and \delimiterfactor , with the default values

```
\delimitershortfall=5pt
\delimiterfactor=901
```

$\text{\delimiterfactor}/1000$ is the relative size of the parenthesis for a given formula environment. They could be of $\text{\delimitershortfall}$ too short. These values are valid at the end of the formula, the best way is to set them straight before the math environment or globally for all in the preamble.

$$\int_{\gamma} F'(z) dz = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} F'(\gamma(t)) \cdot \gamma'(t) dt$$

```
1 {\delimitershortfall=-1pt
2 \[
3 \int_{\gamma} F'(z) dz = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta}
4 F'\left(\gamma(t)\right) \cdot \gamma'(t) dt
5 \]}
```

9 Text in math mode

Standard text in math mode should be written in upright shape and not in the italic one. This shape is reserved for the variable names: $I \text{ am text inside math.}$ (see also Zable 7 on page 34). There are different ways to write text inside math.

- \mathrm . It is like math mode (no spaces), but in upright mode
- \textrm . Upright mode with printed spaces (real textmode)
- \mbox . The font size is still the one from \textstyle (see section 12 on page 39), so that you have to place additional commands when you use \mbox in a super- or subscript for limits.

```
\textstyle
\mbox
\mathrm
```

Inserting long text is possible with a \parbox , which can be aligned as usual to the top, bottom or center, e.g.,

$$a + b + c + d + ef = g + h + i + j + k \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{this is a very long} \\ \text{description of a for-} \\ \text{mula} \end{array} \quad (31)$$

```
1 \begin{eqnarray}
2 a+b+c+d+ef \; \&= \& g+h+i+j+k \; \%
3 \quad \text{\texttrm{\parbox[t]{.25\linewidth}{\%
4 this is a very long description of a formula}\%
5 }}
6 \end{eqnarray}
```

Additional commands for text inside math are provided by $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{math}$ (see section 37 on page 77).

10 Font commands

10.1 Old-style font commands

Should never be used, but are still present and supported by L^AT_EX. The default syntax for the old commands is

```
1 {\XX test}
```

Table 4 shows what has to be replaced for the **XX**. The major difference to the new style is that these **\XX** are toggling the actual math mode into the “XX” one, whereas the new commands start which, at its end, switches back to the previous mode.

\bf test | **\cal TEST** | **\it test** | **\rm test** | **\tt test**

Table 4: Old font style commands

10.2 New-style font commands

The default syntax is

```
1 \mathXX{test}
```

Table 5 shows what has to be replaced for the **XX**. See section 47.13 on page 108 for additional packages.

\mathrm
\mathfrak
\mathcal
\mathsf
\mathbb
\mathtt
\mathit
\mathbf

11 Space

11.1 Math typesetting

L^AT_EX defines the three math lengths¹² with the following values¹³:

```
1 \thinmuskip=3mu
2 \medmuskip=4mu plus 2mu minus 4mu
3 \thickmuskip=5mu plus 5mu
```

\thinmuskip
\medmuskip
\thickmuskip

where **mu** is the abbreviation for math unit.

$$1\mathrm{mu} = \frac{1}{18}\mathrm{em}$$

These lengths can have all glue and are used for the horizontal spacing in math expressions where T_EX puts spaces between symbols and operators. The meaning of these different horizontal skips is shown in table 6. For a better typesetting L^AT_EX inserts different spaces between the symbols.

¹²For more information see: <http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/cseq.html>

¹³see **fontmath.ltx**

Table 5: Fonts in math mode

Command	Test
default	<i>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ</i> <i>abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz</i>
<code>\mathfrak</code>	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
<code>\mathcal</code> ^a	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i>
<code>\mathsf</code>	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
<code>\mathbb</code> ^a	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
<code>\mathtt</code>	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
<code>\mathit</code>	<i>A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z</i> <i>a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z</i>
<code>\mathrm</code>	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
<code>\mathbf</code>	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
<code>\mathds</code> ^b	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

^aNot available for lower letters. For `\mathcal` exists a non free font for lower letters (<http://www.pctex.com>)

^bNeeds package `dsfont`

`\thinmuskip` space between ordinary and operator atoms

`\medmuskip` space between ordinary and binary atoms in display and text styles

`\thickmuskip` space between ordinary and relation atoms in display and text styles

11.2 Additional horizontal spacing

LaTeX defines the following short commands:

default	$f(x) = x^2 + 3x_0 \cdot \sin x$
<code>\thinmuskip=0mu</code>	$f(x) = x^2 + 3x_0 \cdot \sin x$
<code>\medmuskip=0mu</code>	$f(x) = x^2 + 3x_0 \cdot \sin x$
<code>\thickmuskip=0mu</code>	$f(x) = x^2 + 3x_0 \cdot \sin x$
all set to zero	$f(x) = x^2 + 3x_0 \cdot \sin x$

Table 6: The meaning of the math spaces

`\thinspace`
`\medspace`
`\thickspace`
`\negthinspace`
`\negmedspace`
`\negthickspace`

Positive Space		Negative Space
<code>\$ab\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	
<code>\$a b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	
<code>\$a\ b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	
<code>\$a\mbox{\textvisiblespace}b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	
<code>\$a\,b\$</code> (<code>\$a\thinspace b\$</code>)	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	<code>\$a\! b\$</code> $\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$
<code>\$a\: b\$</code> (<code>\$a\medspace b\$</code>)	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	<code>\$a\negmedspace b\$</code> $\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$
<code>\$a\; b\$</code> (<code>\$a\thickspace b\$</code>)	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	<code>\$a\negthickspace b\$</code> $\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$
<code>\$a\quad b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	
<code>\$a\qquad b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	
<code>\$a\hspace{0.5cm}b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	<code>\$a\hspace{-0.5cm}b\$</code> $\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$
<code>\$a\kern0.5cm b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	<code>\$a\kern-0.5cm b\$</code> $\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$
<code>\$a\hphantom{xx}b\$</code>	$\boxed{a}\boxed{b}$	
<code>\$axxb\$</code>	$\boxed{a}xx\boxed{b}$	

Table 7: Spaces in math mode

```

\def\>\mskip\medmuskip}
\def\;{\mskip\thickmuskip}
\def\!{\mskip-\thinmuskip}

```

In math mode there is often a need for additional tiny spaces between variables, e.g., $L \frac{di}{dt}$ written with a tiny space between L and $\frac{di}{dt}$ looks nicer:

$L \frac{di}{dt}$. Table 7 shows a list of all commands for horizontal space which can be used in math mode. The “space” is seen “between” the boxed a and b . For all examples a is `\boxed{a}` and b is `\boxed{b}`. The short forms for some spaces may cause problems with other packages. In this case use the long form of the commands.

```

\hspace
\hphantom
\kern

```

11.3 Problems

Using `\hphantom` in mathmode depends to on object. `\hphantom` reserves only the space of the exact width without any additional space. In the following example the second line is wrong: `& \hphantom{\rightarrow} b\backslash`. It does not reserve any additional space.

$a \rightarrow b$ b b b	<pre> 1 \begin{align*} 2 a & \& \rightarrow b \\ 3 & \& b \\ 4 & \& \mkern\thickmuskip\mkern\thickmuskip b \\ 5 & \& \mathrel{} b \\ 6 \end{align*} </pre>
--	--

This only works when the math symbol is a mathrel one, otherwise you have to change the horizontal space to `\medmuskip` or `\thinmuskip` or to use an empty group after the `\hphantom` command. For more informations about the math objects look into `fontmath.ltx` or `amssymb` or use the `\show` macro, which prints out the type of the mathsymbol, e.g., `\show\rightarrow` with the output:

```

1 > \rightarrow=\mathchar"3221.
2 1.20 \show\rightarrow

```

The first digit represents the type:

- 0 : ordinary
- 1 : large operator
- 2 : binary operation
- 3 : relation
- 4 : opening
- 5 : closing
- 6 : punctuation
- 7 : variable family

Grouping a math symbol can change the behaviour in horizontal spacing. Compare 50×10^{12} and 50×10^{12} , the first one is typeset with `50×10^{12}` and the second one with `$50{\times}10^{12}$`. Another possibility is to use the `numprint` package.¹⁴

11.4 Dot versus comma

In difference to a decimal point and a comma as a marker of thousands a lot of countries prefer it vice versa. To get the same behaviour the meaning of dot and comma has to be changed:

`\mathpunct`
`\mathord`

1,234,567.89 default (32)

1.234.567,89 vice versa, wrong spacing (33)

1.234.567,89 correct spacing (34)

¹⁴CTAN://macros/latex/contrib/numprint/

```

1 %\usepackage{amsmath}
2 1,234,567.89 & \text{ default}\\
3 1.234.567,89 & \text{ vice versa, wrong spacing}\\
4 1\mathpunct{.}234\mathpunct{.}567{,}89 & \text{ correct
   spacing}

```

The original definitions from `fontmath.ltx`¹⁵ are

```

\DeclareMathSymbol{,}{\mathpunct}{letters}{"3B}
\DeclareMathSymbol{.}{\mathord}{letters}{"3A}

```

`\mathord` and `\mathpunct` can be changed for a documentwide other behaviour. In the above equation 33 the comma is only set in a pair of braces `{,}`, which is the same as writing `\mathord{,}` because L^AT_EX handles everything inside of parentheses as a formula, which gets the same spacing.

It is also possible to use the package `icomma`¹⁶ for a documentwide correct spacing.

11.5 Vertical whitespace

11.5.1 Before/after math expressions

There are four predefined lengths, which control the vertical whitespace of displayed formulas:

```

\abovedisplayskip=12pt plus 3pt minus 9pt
\abovedisplayshortskip=0pt plus 3pt
\belowdisplayskip=12pt plus 3pt minus 9pt
\belowdisplayshortskip=7pt plus 3pt minus 4pt

```

The short skips are used if the formula starts behind the end of the foregoing last line. Only for demonstration the shortskips are set to `0pt` in the following examples and the normal skips to `20pt` without any glue:

The line ends before.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx \quad (35)$$

The line doesn't end before the formula.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx \quad (36)$$

And the next line starts as usual with some text ...

¹⁵Located in `texmf/tex/latex/base/`

¹⁶CTAN:// `macros/latex/contrib/was/`

```

1 \abovedisplayshortskip=0pt
2 \belowdisplayshortskip=0pt
3 \abovedisplayskip=20pt
4 \belowdisplayskip=20pt
5 \noindent The line ends before.
6 \begin{equation}
7   f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx, \mathrm{d}x
8 \end{equation}
9 \noindent The line doesn't end before the formula.
10 \begin{equation}
11   f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx, \mathrm{d}x
12 \end{equation}
13 \noindent And the next line starts as usual with some text
    ...

```

fleqn class
option

When using the fleqn classoption for left aligned equations the math environments equation and [...] are typeset as a list. This is the reason why the vertical space is defined by the length registers for a list, especially \topsep, instead of \abovedisplayskip and \belowdisplayskip. This doesn't effect the eqnarray environment.

11.5.2 Inside math expressions

\setlength{<length>} This works inside the math mode in the same way as in the text mode.

\jot

\jot The vertical space between the lines for all math expressions which allow multiple lines can be changed with the length \jot, which is predefined as

\newdimen\jot \jot=3pt

The following three formulas show this for the default value, \setlength\jot{0pt} and \setlength\jot{10pt}.

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 y = d & y = d & y = d \\
 y = c\frac{1}{x} + d & y = c\frac{1}{x} + d & y = c\frac{1}{x} + d \\
 y = b\frac{1}{x^2} + cx + d & y = b\frac{1}{x^2} + cx + d & y = b\frac{1}{x^2} + cx + d
 \end{array}$$

Defining a new environment with a parameter makes things easier, because changes to the length are locally.

```

1 \newenvironment{mathspace}[1]{%
2   \setlength{\jot}{#1}%
3   \ignorespaces%

```

```
4 }{  
5 \ignorespacesafterend  
6 }
```

Mode	Inline	Displayed
default	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$
<code>\displaystyle</code>	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$
<code>\scriptstyle</code>	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$
<code>\scriptscriptstyle</code>	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$
<code>\textstyle</code>	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$	$f(t) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\omega}{t}} dt$

Table 8: Math styles

12 Styles

This depends on the environment in which they are used. An inline formula has a default math fontsize called `\textstyle`, which is smaller than the one for a display formula (see section 3), which is called `\displaystyle`. Beside this predefinition there are two other special fontstyles for math, `\scriptstyle` and `\scriptscriptstyle`. They are called “style” in difference to “size”, because they have a dynamic character, their real fontsize belongs to the environment in which they are used. A fraction for example is by default in scriptstyle when it is in an inline formula like this $\frac{a}{b}$, which can be changed to $\frac{a}{b}$. This may be in some cases useful but it looks in general ugly because the line spacing is too big. These four styles are predefined and together in a logical relationship. It is no problem to use the other styles like `\Large`, ... **outside** the math environment. For example a fraction written with `\Huge`: $\frac{a}{b}$ (`\Huge$\frac{a}{b}$`). This may cause some problems when you want to write a displayed formula in another fontsize, because it also affects the interline spacing of the preceding part of the paragraph. If you end the paragraph, you get problems with spacing and page breaking above the equations. So it is better to declare the font size and then restore the baselines:

$$\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 0.5 \quad (37)$$

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \newenvironment{smallequation}[1]{%
3   \skip@=\baselineskip
4   #1%
5   \baselineskip=\skip@

```

```
6 \equation
7 }\endequation \ignorespacesafterend}
8 \makeatother
9
10 \begin{smallequation}\tiny
11 \int_1^2\,,\frac{1}{x^2}\,,\mathrm{d}x=0.5
12 \end{smallequation}
```

If you use this the other way round for huge font sizes, don't forget to load package `exscale` (see section 47.14 on page 108). Also see this section for different symbol sizes.

13 Dots

In addition to the above decorations there are some more different dots which are single commands and not by default over/under a letter. It is not easy to see the differences between some of them. Dots from lower left to upper right are possible with `\reflectbox{\ddots}` . . .

									<code>\cdots</code>
									<code>\dots</code>
									<code>\dotso</code>
									<code>\dotsc</code>
									<code>\dotsi</code>
									<code>\dotsm</code>
									<code>\dotso</code>
									<code>\ldots</code>
									<code>\vdots</code>
<code>\cdots</code>	...	<code>\ddots</code>	\ddots	<code>\dotso</code>	...	<code>\dotsc</code>	...	<code>\dotsi</code>	...
<code>\dotsm</code>	...	<code>\dotso</code>	...	<code>\ldots</code>	...	<code>\vdots</code>	:		

Table 9: Dots in math mode

14 Accents

The letter “a” is only for demonstration. The table 10 shows all in standard L^AT_EX available accents and also the ones placed under a character. With package `amssymb` it is easy to define new accents. For more information see section 31 on page 70 or other possibilities at section 47.1 on page 98.

<code>\acute</code>	\acute{a}	<code>\bar</code>	\bar{a}	<code>\breve</code>	\breve{a}
<code>\bar</code>	\bar{a}	<code>\breve</code>	\breve{a}		
<code>\check</code>	\check{a}	<code>\dddot</code>	\dddot{a}	<code>\ddot</code>	\ddot{a}
<code>\dot</code>	\dot{a}	<code>\grave</code>	\grave{a}	<code>\hat</code>	\hat{a}
<code>\mathring</code>	\mathring{a}	<code>\overbrace</code>	\overbrace{a}	<code>\overleftarrow</code>	\overleftarrow{a}
<code>\overleftrightharpoon</code>	\overleftrightharpoon{a}	<code>\overline</code>	\overline{a}	<code>\overrightarrow</code>	\overrightarrow{a}
<code>\tilde</code>	\tilde{a}	<code>\underbar</code>	\underbar{a}	<code>\underbrace</code>	\underbrace{a}
<code>\underleftarrow</code>	\underleftarrow{a}	<code>\underleftrightharpoon</code>	$\underleftrightharpoon{a}$	<code>\underline</code>	\underline{a}
<code>\underrightarrow</code>	\underrightarrow{a}	<code>\vec</code>	\vec{a}	<code>\widehat</code>	\widehat{a}
<code>\widetilde</code>	\widetilde{a}				

Table 10: Accents in math mode

The letters `i` and `j` can be substituted with the macros `\imath` and `\jmath` when an accents is placed over these letters and the dot should disappear: \vec{j} (`\vec{\imath}` `\ddot{\jmath}`).

Accents can be used in different ways, e.g., strike a single character with a horizontal line like `\mathaccent{-A$}` \AA or `\mathaccent\mathcode{-A$}` \AA . In section 47.7 on page 102 is a better solution for more than one character.

14.1 Over- and underbrackets

There are no `\underbracket` and `\overbracket` commands in the list of accents. They can be defined in the preamble with the following code.

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \def\underbracket{%
3   \@ifnextchar [{\@underbracket}{\@underbracket [\@bracketheight]}%
4 }
5 \def\@underbracket[#1]{%
6   \@ifnextchar [{\@under@bracket[#1]}{\@under@bracket[#1][0.4em]}%
7 }
8 \def\@under@bracket[#1][#2]#3{%\message{Underbracket: #1,#2,#3}
9   \mathop{\vtop{\m@th \ialign {##\cr\cr $ \hfil \displaystyle {#3}\hfil $
10     \cr\cr \noalign {\kern 3\p@ \nointerlineskip } \upbracketfill {#1}{#2}
11     \cr\cr \noalign {\kern 3\p@ }}}}\limits}
12 \def\upbracketfill#1#2{ $\m@th \setbox \z@ \hbox { $\bracketd$}
13   \edef\@bracketheight{\the\ht\z@}\bracketend{#1}{#2}
14   \leaders \vrule \@height #1 \@depth \z@ \hfill
15   \leaders \vrule \@height #1 \@depth \z@ \hfill \
16   bracketend{#1}{#2}$}
17 \def\bracketend#1#2{\vrule height #2 width #1\relax}
18 \makeatother

```

1. `\underbrace{...}` is an often used command:

$$\underbrace{x^2 + 2x + 1}_{(x+1)^2} = f(x) \quad (38)$$

2. Sometimes an **underbracket** is needed, which can be used in more ways than `\underbrace{...}`. An example for `\underbracket{...}`:

Hate Science $1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 3 \rightarrow 4 \rightarrow 5 \rightarrow 6 \rightarrow 7 \rightarrow 8 \rightarrow 9 \rightarrow 10$ Love Science




low
medium
high

14.1.1 Use of `\underbracket{...}`

The `\underbracket{...}` command has two optional parameters:

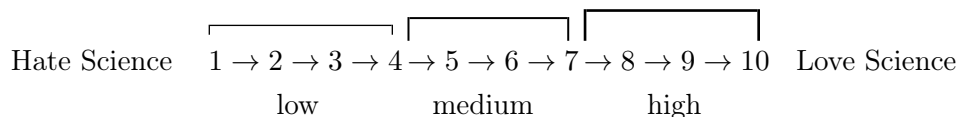
- the line thickness in any valid latex unit, e.g., `1pt`
- the height of the edge brackets, e.g., `1em`

using without any parameters gives the same values for thickness and height as predefined for the `\underbrace` command.

1.	<code>\underbracket{foo~bar}\$</code>	<i>foo bar</i> 
2.	<code>\underbracket[2pt]{foo~bar}\$</code>	<i>foo bar</i> 
3.	<code>\underbracket[2pt][1em]{foo~bar}\$</code>	<i>foo bar</i> 

14.1.2 Overbracket




In addition to the underbracket an overbracket is also useful, which can be used in more ways than `\overbrace{...}`. For example:



The `\overbracket{...}` command has two optional parameters:

- the line thickness in any valid latex unit, e.g., `1pt`
- the height of the edge brackets, e.g., `1em`

using without any parameters gives the same values for thickness and height as predefined for the `\overbrace` command.

1.	<code>\overbracket {foo\ bar}\$</code>	<i>foo bar</i> 
2.	<code>\overbracket[2pt] {foo\ bar}\$</code>	<i>foo bar</i> 
3.	<code>\overbracket[2pt][1em] {foo\ bar}\$</code>	<i>foo bar</i> 

<code>\vv{...}</code>	<code>\overrightarrow{...}</code>
\vec{a}	\overrightarrow{a}
\vec{abc}	\overrightarrow{abc}
\vec{i}	\overrightarrow{i}
$\vec{A_x}$	$\overrightarrow{A_x}$

Table 11: Vectors with package `esvec` (in the right column the default one from L^AT_EX)

14.2 Vectors

Especially for vectors there is the package `esvect`¹⁷ package, which looks better than the `\overrightarrow`, e.g.,

Look into the documentation for more details about the package `esvect`.

15 Exponents and indices

The two active characters `_` and `^` can only be used in math mode. The **following** character will be printed as an index (`$y=a_1x+a_0$`: $y = a_1x + a_0$) or as an exponent (`$x^2+y^2=r^2$`: $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$). For more than the next character put it inside of `{}`, like `$a_{i-1}+a_{i+1}<a_i$`: $a_{i-1} + a_{i+1} < a_i$.

Especially for multiple exponents there are several possibilities. For example:

$$((x^2)^3)^4 = ((x^2)^3)^4 = \left((x^2)^3\right)^4 \quad (39)$$

```

1 ((x^2)^3)^4 =
2 {{{(x^2)}^3}}^4 =
3 {\left({\left(x^2\right)}^3\right)}^4

```

For variables with both exponent and indice index the order is not important, `a_1^2` is exactly the same than `a^2_1`: $a_1^2 = a_1^2$. By default all exponents and indices are set as italic characters. It is possible to change this behaviour to get upright characters. The following example shows this for the indices.

$$A^{abc123def}_{abc_{xyz}123def}aa$$

$$A^{abc123def}_{abc_{xyz}123def}aa$$

```

1 $A_{abc_{xyz}123def}^{abc123def}aa$
2
3 \makeatletter
4 \catcode'\_ \active
5 \def_#1{\sb{operator@font#1}}
6 \makeatother
7
8 $A_{abc_{xyz}123def}^{abc123def}aa$

```

¹⁷CTAN://macros/latex/contrib/esvect/

16 Operators

They are written in upright font shape and are placed with some additional space before and after for a better typesetting. With the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package it is possible to define one's own operators (see section 36 on page 76). Table 12 and 13 show a list of the predefined ones for standard L^AT_EX.

<code>\coprod</code>	\coprod	<code>\bigvee</code>	\bigvee	<code>\bigwedge</code>	\bigwedge
<code>\biguplus</code>	\biguplus	<code>\bigcap</code>	\bigcap	<code>\bigcup</code>	\bigcup
<code>\intop</code>	\intop	<code>\int</code>	\int	<code>\prod</code>	\prod
<code>\sum</code>	\sum	<code>\bigotimes</code>	\bigotimes	<code>\bigoplus</code>	\bigoplus
<code>\bigodot</code>	\bigodot	<code>\ointop</code>	\ointop	<code>\oint</code>	\oint
<code>\bigsqcup</code>	\bigsqcup	<code>\smallint</code>	\smallint		

Table 12: The predefined operators of `fontmath.ltx`

The difference between `\intop` and `\int` is that the first one has by default over/under limits and the second subscript/superscript limits. Both can be changed with the `\limits` or `\nolimits` command. The same behaviour happens to the `\ointop` and `\oint` Symbols.

<code>\log</code>	\log	<code>\lg</code>	\lg	<code>\ln</code>	\ln
<code>\lim</code>	\lim	<code>\limsup</code>	\limsup	<code>\liminf</code>	\liminf
<code>\sin</code>	\sin	<code>\arcsin</code>	\arcsin	<code>\sinh</code>	\sinh
<code>\cos</code>	\cos	<code>\arccos</code>	\arccos	<code>\cosh</code>	\cosh
<code>\tan</code>	\tan	<code>\arctan</code>	\arctan	<code>\tanh</code>	\tanh
<code>\cot</code>	\cot	<code>\coth</code>	\coth	<code>\sec</code>	\sec
<code>\csc</code>	\csc	<code>\max</code>	\max	<code>\min</code>	\min
<code>\sup</code>	\sup	<code>\inf</code>	\inf	<code>\arg</code>	\arg
<code>\ker</code>	\ker	<code>\dim</code>	\dim	<code>\hom</code>	\hom
<code>\det</code>	\det	<code>\exp</code>	\exp	<code>\Pr</code>	\Pr
<code>\gcd</code>	\gcd	<code>\deg</code>	\deg	<code>\bmod</code>	\bmod
<code>\pmod{a}</code>	$(\bmod a)$				

Table 13: The predefined operators of `latex.ltx`

For more predefined operator names see table 20 on page 100. It is easy to define a new operator with

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \newcommand\foo{\mathop{\operator@font foo}\nolimits}
3 \makeatother

```

Now you can use `\foo` in the usual way:

$$\text{foo}_1^2 = x^2$$

```
\[ \text{foo}_1^2 = x^2 \]
```

In this example `\foo` is defined with `\nolimits`, means that limits are placed in superscript/subscript mode and not over under. This is still possible with `\limits` in the definition or the equation:

$$\text{foo}_1^2 = x^2$$

```
\[ \foo\limits_1^2 = x^2 \]
```

\mathcal{M} math has an own macro for a definition, have a look at section 36 on page 76.

17 Greek letters

The \mathcal{M} math package simulates a bold font for the greek letters, it writes a greek character twice with a small kerning. The `\mathbf{<character>}` doesn't work with lower greek character. See section 40 on page 81 for the `\pmb` macro, which makes it possible to print bold lower greek letters. Not all upper case letters have own macro names. If there is no difference to the roman font, then the default letter is used, e.g., A for the upper case of α . Table 14 shows only those upper case letters which have own macro names. Some of the lower case letters have an additional `var` option for an alternative.

lower	default	upper	default	<code>\mathbf</code>	<code>\mathit</code>
<code>\alpha</code>	α				
<code>\beta</code>	β				
<code>\gamma</code>	γ	<code>\Gamma</code>	Γ	$\mathbf{\Gamma}$	\varGamma
<code>\delta</code>	δ	<code>\Delta</code>	Δ	$\mathbf{\Delta}$	\varDelta
<code>\epsilon</code>	ϵ				
<code>\varepsilon</code>	ε				
<code>\zeta</code>	ζ				
<code>\eta</code>	η				
<code>\theta</code>	θ	<code>\Theta</code>	Θ	$\mathbf{\Theta}$	\varTheta
<code>\vartheta</code>	ϑ				
<code>\iota</code>	ι				
<code>\kappa</code>	κ				
<code>\lambda</code>	λ	<code>\Lambda</code>	Λ	$\mathbf{\Lambda}$	\varLambda
<code>\mu</code>	μ				
<code>\nu</code>	ν				
<code>\xi</code>	ξ	<code>\Xi</code>	Ξ	$\mathbf{\Xi}$	\varXi
<code>\pi</code>	π	<code>\Pi</code>	Π	$\mathbf{\Pi}$	\varPi
<code>\varpi</code>	ϖ				
<code>\rho</code>	ρ				
<code>\varrho</code>	ϱ				
<code>\sigma</code>	σ	<code>\Sigma</code>	Σ	$\mathbf{\Sigma}$	\varSigma

lower	default	upper	default	<code>\mathbf</code>	<code>\mathit</code>
<code>\varsigma</code>	ς				
<code>\tau</code>	τ				
<code>\upsilon</code>	υ	<code>\Upsilon</code>	Υ	Υ	Υ
<code>\phi</code>	ϕ	<code>\Phi</code>	Φ	Φ	Φ
<code>\varphi</code>	φ				
<code>\chi</code>	χ				
<code>\psi</code>	ψ	<code>\Psi</code>	Ψ	Ψ	Ψ
<code>\omega</code>	ω	<code>\Omega</code>	Ω	Ω	Ω

Table 14: The greek letters

Bold greek letters are possible with the package `bm` (see section 47.5 on page 101) and if they should also be upright with the package `upgreek`:

`\bm{\upalpha}`, `\bm{\upbeta}` ... α, β ...

A useful definition maybe:

```

1 \usepackage{upgreek}
2 \makeatletter
3 \newcommand{\bfgreek}[1]{\bm{\@nameuse{up#1}}}
4 \makeatother

```

Then `\bfgreek{\mu}` will allow you to type μ to obtain an upright boldface μ .

18 Pagebreaks

By default a displayed formula cannot have a pagebreak. This makes some sense, but sometimes it gives a better typesetting when a pagebreak is possible.

`\allowdisplaybreaks`

`\allowdisplaybreaks`

`\allowdisplaybreaks` enables \TeX to insert pagebreaks into displayed formulas whenever a newline command appears. With the command `\displaybreak` it is also possible to insert a pagebreak at any place.

19 `\stackrel`

`\stackrel` puts a character on top of another one which may be important if a used symbol is not predefined. For example “ $\stackrel{\wedge}{=}$ ” (`\stackrel{\wedge}{=}`). The syntax is

`\stackrel`

```

1 \stackrel{top}{base}

```

Such symbols may be often needed so that a macro definition in the preamble makes some sense:

```

1 \newcommand{\eqdef}{%
2   \ensuremath{%
3     \stackrel{\mathrm{def}}{=}%
4   }%
5 }
```

With the `\ensuremath` command we can use the new `\eqdef` command in text and in math mode, \LaTeX switches automatically in math mode, which saves some keystrokes like the following command, which is written without the delimiters (\dots) for the math mode $\stackrel{\text{def}}{=}$, only `\eqdef` with a space at the end. In math mode together with another material it may look like $\vec{x} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ and as command sequence

```

1 $\vec{x}\eqdef\left(x_{1},\ldots,x_{n}\right)$
```

The fontsize of the top is one size smaller than the one from the base, but it is no problem to get both the same size, just increase the top or decrease the base.

20 \choose

`\choose` is like `\atop` with delimiters or like `\frac` without the fraction line and also with delimiters. It is often used for binomial coefficients and has the following syntax:

`\choose`

```

1 {above \choose below}
```

The two braces are not really important but it is safe to use them.

$$\binom{m+1}{n} = \binom{m}{n} + \binom{m}{k-1} \quad (40)$$

```

1 {\m+1 \choose n}={\m \choose n}+{\m \choose k-1}\label{eq:
  choose}
```

See section 29.2 on page 69 for the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math equivalents and enhancements.

21 Color in math expressions

There is no difference in using colored text and colored math expressions. With

```
\usepackage{color}
```

in the preamble the macro `\textcolor{<color>}{<text or math>}` exists.

$$f(x) = \int_1^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^2} dx = 1 \quad (41)$$

`\textcolor`

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \textcolor{blue}{f(x)} = \int\limits_1^{\infty} \textcolor{red}
  {\frac{1}{x^2}} \, \mathrm{d}x = 1
3 \end{equation}

```

If all math expressions should be printed in the same color, then it is better to use the `everydisplay` macro (section 24 on page 50).

22 Boldmath

`\mathversion`
`\boldmath`
`\unboldmath`

Writing a whole formula in bold is possible with the command sequence `\boldmath ... \unboldmath`, which itself must be written in textmode (outside the formula) or with the command `\mathversion{bold} ...`.

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq p \\ 1 \leq j \leq q \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki} \qquad \sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq p \\ 1 \leq j \leq q \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} \mathbf{a}_{ij} \mathbf{b}_{jk} \mathbf{c}_{ki}$$

```

1 \boldmath
2 \[
3 \sum_{%
4   \makebox[0pt]{${%
5     {\scriptscriptstyle 1 \leq j \leq p \atop {%
6       {1 \leq j \leq q \atop 1 \leq k \leq r}}}%
7   }}%
8   } a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki}
9 \]
10 \unboldmath

```

The `\mathversion` macro defines a math style which is valid for all following math expressions. If you want to have all math in bold then use this macro instead of `\boldmath`. But it is no problem to put `\mathversion` inside a group to hold the changes locally.

$$y(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \quad (42)$$

```

1 {\mathversion{bold}%
2 \begin{equation}
3 y(x) = ax^3+bx^2+cx+d
4 \end{equation}}

```


Single characters inside a formula can be written in bold with `\mathbf`, but only in upright mode, which is in general not useful as shown in equation 43. It is better to use package `bm` (see section 47.5 on page 101).

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq p \\ 1 \leq k \leq q \\ 1 \leq i \leq r}} a_{ij} \mathbf{b}_{jk} c_{ki} \quad (43)$$

22.1 Bold math expressions as part of titles and items

By default the titles in sections, subsections, a.s.o. are printed in bold. Same for the `description` environment. The problem is that a math expression in one of these environments is printed in default font shape, like the following example for a `section` and `description` environment:

22 Function $f(x) = x^2$

This is $y = f(x)$ Only a demonstration.

And $z = f(x, y)$ Another demonstration.

With a redefinition of the `\section` and `\item` macros it is possible to get everything in bold font.

22 Function $f(x) = x^2$

This is $y = f(x)$ Only a demonstration.

And $z = f(x, y)$ Another demonstration.

```

1 \let\itemOld\item
2 \makeatletter
3 \renewcommand\item[1][]{%
4   \def\@tempa{#1}
5   \ifx\@tempa\empty\itemOld\else\boldmath\itemOld[#1]\unboldmath\fi%
6 }
7 \makeatother
8 \let\sectionOld\section
9 \renewcommand\section[2][\empty]{%
10   \boldmath\sectionOld[#1]{#2}\unboldmath%
11 }

```

23 Multiplying numbers

When the dot is used as the decimal marker as in the United States, the preferred sign for the multiplication of numbers or values of quantities is a cross (`\times` \times), not a half-high and centered dot (`\cdot` \cdot).

When the comma is used as the decimal marker as in Europe, the preferred sign for the multiplication of numbers is the half-high dot. The multiplication of quantity symbols (or numbers in parentheses or values of quantities in parentheses) may be indicated in one of the following ways: ab , $a \cdot b$, $a \times b$.

For more information see “Nist Guide to SI Units -More on Printing and Using Symbols and Numbers in Scientific and Technical Documents”¹⁸ or the German DIN 1304, Teil 1.

24 Other macros

There are some other macros which are not mentioned in the foregoing text. Here comes a not really complete list of these macros.

`\everymath`
`\everydisplay`
`\underline`

`\everymath` puts the argument before any inlined math expression, e.g., `\everymath{\displaysize}`. Using this macro doesn’t really make sense, when one is using footnotes because the footnote number is printed as superscript in inline mathmode and an `\everymath` will be valid, too.

`\everydisplay` puts the argument before any displayed math expression, e.g., `\everydisplay{\color{blue}}`.

`\underline` underlines a math expression and has to be used inside the math mode.

$$\underline{F(x) = \int f(x) \, dx}$$

¹⁸<http://physics.nist.gov/Pubs/SP811/sec10.html>

Part II

$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package

In general the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ packages are at least a collection of three different ones:

1. `amsmath.sty`
2. `amssymb.sty`
3. `amsfonts.sty`

In the following only the first one is described in detail.

The $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math has the following options:

<code>centertags</code>	(default) For a split equation, place equation numbers vertically centered on the total height of the equation.
<code>tbtags</code>	‘Top-or-bottom tags’ For a split equation, place equation numbers level with the last (resp. first) line, if numbers are on the right (resp. left).
<code>sumlimits</code>	(default) Place the subscripts and superscripts of summation symbols above and below, in displayed equations. This option also affects other symbols of the same type – \prod , \coprod , \bigotimes , \bigoplus , and so forth – but excluding integrals (see below).
<code>nosumlimits</code>	Always place the subscripts and superscripts of summation-type symbols to the side, even in displayed equations.
<code>intlimits</code>	Like <code>sumlimits</code> , but for integral symbols.
<code>nointlimits</code>	(default) Opposite of <code>intlimits</code> .
<code>namelimits</code>	(default) Like <code>sumlimits</code> , but for certain ‘operator names’ such as <code>det</code> , <code>inf</code> , <code>lim</code> , <code>max</code> , <code>min</code> , that traditionally have subscripts placed underneath when they occur in a displayed equation.
<code>nonamelimits</code>	Opposite of <code>namelimits</code> .

To use one of these package options, put the option name in the optional argument, e.g., `\usepackage[intlimits]{amsmath}`. The $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math also recognises the following options which are normally selected (implicitly or explicitly) through the `documentclass` command, and thus need not be repeated in the option list of the `\usepackage{amsmath}` statement.

<code>leqno</code>	Place equation numbers on the left.
<code>reqno</code>	(default) Place equation numbers on the right.
<code>fleqn</code>	Position equations at a fixed indent from the left margin rather than centered in the text column. $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math defines the length <code>\mathindent</code> and uses it when the equations have only one tabbing character (<code>&</code>).

All math environments are displayed ones, so there is no special inline math.

25 align environments

There are four different align environments, described in the following subsections. Their behaviour is shown in table 15. The symbolic code for all align environments is:

```

1 \begin{<name>}
2   <name> &= x & x &= x \\
3   <name> &= x & x &= x
4 \end{<name>}

```

Table 15: Comparison between the different align environments with the same code, where the first three can have an equation number

align	=	x	x	=	x
align	=	x	x	=	x
alignat	=	x	x	=	x
alignat	=	x	x	=	x
flalign	=	x	x	=	x
flalign	=	x	x	=	x
xalignat	=	x	x	=	x
xalignat	=	x	x	=	x
xxalignat	=	x	x	=	x
xxalignat	=	x	x	=	x

In difference to the `eqnarray` environment from standard L^AT_EX (section 3.2), the “three” parts of one equation `expr.-symbol-expr.` are divided

by only one ampersand in two parts. In general the ampersand should be before the symbol to get the right spacing, e.g., $y \&= x$. Compare the following three equations, the second one has a wrong spacing.

$y = x$	1 $y \&= x$
$y =x$	2 $y \&= x$
$y = x$	3 $y =\{ \}& x$

25.1 The default align environment

The `eqnarray` environment has a not so good spacing between the cells. Writing the equations no. 3 to 6 with the `align` environment gives:

$$y = d \tag{44}$$

$$y = cx + d \tag{45}$$

$$y_{12} = bx^2 + cx + d \tag{46}$$

$$y(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \tag{47}$$

The code looks like:

```

1 \begin{align}
2   y \&=d\label{eq:IntoSection}\\
3   y \&=cx+d\\
4   y_{12} \&=bx^2+cx+d\\
5   y(x) \&=ax^3+bx^2+cx+d
6 \end{align}
```

- The `align` environment has an implicit `{r l r l ...}` horizontal alignment with a vertical column-alignment, e.g.,

12

3

```

1 \begin{align*}
2   1 \& 2 \& 3
3 \end{align*}
```

- A nonnumber-version `\begin{align*}...\end{align*}` exists.
- Unnumbered single rows are possible with `\nonumber`.
- The `align` environment takes the whole horizontal space if you have more than two columns:

$$y = d \qquad z = 1 \tag{48}$$

$$y = cx + d \qquad z = x + 1 \tag{49}$$

$$y_{12} = bx^2 + cx + d \qquad z = x^2 + x + 1$$

$$y(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \qquad z = x^3 + x^2 + x + 1 \tag{50}$$

The code for this example looks like

```

1 \begin{align}
2   y &= d & z &= 1 \\
3   y &= cx + d & z &= x + 1 \\
4   y_{12} &= bx^2 + cx + d & z &= x^2 + x + 1 \nonumber \\
5   y(x) &= ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d & z &= x^3 + x^2 + x + 1 \\
6 \end{align}

```

25.2 alignat environment

`\begin{align}`

`\dots`

`\end{align}`

>From now the counting of the equation changes. It is introduced with a foregoing command, which doesn't really make sense, it is only for demonstration:

`\renewcommand{\theequation}{\thepart-\arabic{equation}}`.

This means “align at several places” and is something like more than two `align` environment side by side. Parameter is the number of the `align` environments, which is not important for the user. The above last `align` example looks like:

$$y = d \qquad z = 1 \qquad \text{(II-51)}$$

$$y = cx + d \qquad z = x + 1 \qquad \text{(II-52)}$$

$$y_{12} = bx^2 + cx + d \qquad z = x^2 + x + 1$$

$$y(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \qquad z = x^3 + x^2 + x + 1 \qquad \text{(II-53)}$$

The parameter was 2 and it is 3 for the following example:

$$i_{11} = 0.25 \qquad i_{12} = i_{21} \qquad i_{13} = i_{23}$$

$$i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11} \qquad i_{22} = 0.5i_{12} \qquad i_{23} = i_{31} \qquad \text{(II-54)}$$

$$i_{31} = 0.33i_{22} \qquad i_{32} = 0.15i_{32} \qquad i_{33} = i_{11} \qquad \text{(II-55)}$$

For this example the code is:

```

1 \begin{alignat}{3}
2   i_{11} &= 0.25 & i_{12} &= i_{21} & i_{13} &= i_{23} \nonumber \\
3   i_{21} &= \frac{1}{3}i_{11} & i_{22} &= 0.5i_{12} & i_{23} &= i_{31} \\
4   i_{31} &= 0.33i_{22} & i_{32} &= 0.15i_{32} & i_{33} &= i_{11} \\
5 \end{alignat}

```

With the `alignat` environment one can easily align equations vertically at more than one marker:

$$abc = xxx \qquad \qquad \qquad = xxxxxxxxxxxx = aaaaaaaaaa \qquad \text{(II-56)}$$

$$ab = yyyyyyyyyyyyyyy = yyyy \qquad \qquad \qquad = ab \qquad \text{(II-57)}$$

```

1 \begin{alignat}{3}
2   abc & \&= xxx \qquad \qquad \qquad \&\&= xxxxxxxxxxxx \&\&= aaaaaaaaaa \\\
3   ab  & \&= yyyyyyyyyyyyyyy \&\&= yyyy \qquad \qquad \qquad \&\&= ab \\
4 \end{alignat}

```

- The `alignat` environment has an implicit `{r...r}` horizontal alignment with a vertical column alignment.
- A nonnumber-version `\begin{alignat*}...\end{alignat*}` exists.
- Unnumbered single rows are possible with `\nonumber`.

25.3 flalign environment

This is the new replacement for the `xalignat` and `xxalignat` environments. It is nearly the same as the `xalignat` environment, only more “out spaced” and “left aligned”.

```

\begin{flalign}
...
\end{flalign}

```

$$i_{11} = 0.25$$

$$i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11} \qquad \text{(II-58)}$$

$$i_{31} = 0.33i_{22} \qquad \text{(II-59)}$$

```

1 \begin{flalign}
2 i_{11} & \&= 0.25 \nonumber \\
3 i_{21} & \&= \frac{1}{3}i_{11} \\
4 i_{31} & \&= 0.33i_{22} \\
5 \end{flalign}

```

As seen, the equations are not really left aligned, when they have only one ampersand. In this case `flalign` has the same behaviour as the `align` environment.

When there are more than one tabbing characters (`&`), then the equations are really left aligned. This is also an easy way to get an equation with only one ampersand left aligned, see equation II-63 below.

$$i_{11} = 0.25 \qquad \qquad \qquad i_{12} = i_{21} \qquad \qquad \qquad i_{13} = i_{23}$$

$$i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11} \qquad \qquad \qquad i_{22} = 0.5i_{12} \qquad \qquad \qquad i_{23} = i_{31} \text{ (II-60)}$$

$$i_{31} = 0.33i_{22} \qquad \qquad \qquad i_{32} = 0.15i_{32} \qquad \qquad \qquad i_{33} = i_{11} \text{ (II-61)}$$

The code looks like:

```

1 \begin{flalign}
2 i_{11} & \&= 0.25 \& i_{12} & \&= i_{21} \& i_{13} & \&= i_{23} \nonumber \\
3 i_{21} & \&= \frac{1}{3}i_{11} \& i_{22} & \&= 0.5i_{12} \& i_{23} & \&= i_{31} \\
4 i_{31} & \&= 0.33i_{22} \quad \& i_{32} & \&= 0.15i_{32} \quad \& i_{33} & \&= i_{11} \\
5 \end{flalign}

```

This environment can be used to mix centered and left aligned equations without using the document wide valid option `fleqn`.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{1}{x^2} dx \quad (\text{II-62})$$

$$f(x) = \int \frac{1}{x^2} dx \quad (\text{II-63})$$

Equation II-63 is left aligned in fact of the second tabbing character `&`.

```

1 \begin{align}\label{eq:centered}
2   f(x) &= \int \frac{1}{x^2} dx, \mathrm{d}x
3 \end{align}
4
5 \begin{flalign}\label{eq:leftaligned}
6   f(x) &= \int \frac{1}{x^2} dx, \mathrm{d}x &
7 \end{flalign}
```

Another case is placing text left aligned, whereas the formulas should be right aligned.

$$12(x-1) + 20(y-3) + 14(z-2) = 0$$

same as

$$6x + 10y + 7z = 0$$

```

1 \begin{flalign*}
2   && 12(x-1)+20(y-3)+14(z-2) &= 0\\
3 \text{same as } && 6x+10y+7z &= 0
4 \end{flalign*}
```

25.4 `xalignat` environment

This is an obsolete macro but still supported by the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package. Same as `alignat` environment, only a little more “out spaced”.

```

\begin{xalignat}
...
\end{xalignat}
```

$$\begin{array}{lll} i_{11} = 0.25 & i_{12} = i_{21} & i_{13} = i_{23} \\ i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11} & i_{22} = 0.5i_{12} & i_{23} = i_{31} \end{array} \quad (\text{II-64})$$

$$\begin{array}{lll} i_{31} = 0.33i_{22} & i_{32} = 0.15i_{32} & i_{33} = i_{11} \end{array} \quad (\text{II-65})$$

The same code looks like:

```

1 \begin{xalignat}{3}
2   i_{11} &= 0.25 & i_{12} &= i_{21} & i_{13} &= i_{23} \nonumber \\
3   i_{21} &= \frac{1}{3}i_{11} & i_{22} &= 0.5i_{12} & i_{23} &= i_{31} \\
4   i_{31} &= 0.33i_{22} \quad & i_{32} &= 0.15i_{32} \quad & i_{33} &= i_{11} \\
5 \end{xalignat}
```


25.5 `xxalignat` environment

Like `xalignat` an obsolete macro but still supported by the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package. Same as `align` environment, only extremely “out spaced”, therefore no equation number!

`\begin{xxalignat}`
...
`\end{xxalignat}`

$$\begin{array}{lll} i_{11} = 0.25 & i_{12} = i_{21} & i_{13} = i_{23} \\ i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11} & i_{22} = 0.5i_{12} & i_{23} = i_{31} \\ i_{31} = 0.33i_{22} & i_{32} = 0.15i_{32} & i_{33} = i_{11} \end{array}$$

The same code looks like:

```
1 \begin{xxalignat}{3}
2   i_{11} & = 0.25 & i_{12} & = i_{21} & i_{13} & = i_{23} \nonumber \\
3   i_{21} & = \frac{1}{3}i_{11} & i_{22} & = 0.5i_{12} & i_{23} & = i_{31} \\
4   i_{31} & = 0.33i_{22} & i_{32} & = 0.15i_{32} & i_{33} & = i_{11} \\
5 \end{xxalignat}
```

25.6 `aligned` environment

In difference to the `split` environment (section 26.4 on page 63), the `aligned` environment allows more than one horizontal alignment but has also only one equation number:

`\begin{aligned}`
...
`\end{aligned}`

$$\begin{array}{lcl} 2x + 3 = 7 & 2x + 3 - 3 = 7 - 3 & \\ 2x = 4 & \frac{2x}{2} = \frac{4}{2} & \text{(II-66)} \\ x = 2 & & \end{array}$$

```
1 \begin{equation}
2 \begin{aligned}
3   2x+3 & = 7 & & 2x+3-3 & = 7-3 & \\
4   2x & = 4 & & \frac{2x}{2} & = \frac{4}{2} & \\
5   x & = 2 & & & & \\
6 \end{aligned}
7 \end{equation}
```

The `aligned` environment is similar to the `array` environment, there exists no starred version and it has only one equation number and has to be part of another math environment, which should be `equation` environment. The advantage of `aligned` is the much better horizontal and vertical spacing.

25.7 Problems

When using one of the `align` environments, there should be no `\\` at the end of the last line, otherwise you’ll get another equation number for this “empty” line:

$$2x + 3 = 7$$

(II-67)

(II-68)

```

1 \begin{align}
2   2x+3 &= 7\\
3 \end{align}

```

$$2x + 3 = 7$$

(II-69)

```

1 \begin{align}
2   2x+3 &= 7
3 \end{align}

```

26 Other environments

26.1 gather environment

This is like a multi line environment with no special horizontal alignment. All rows are centered and can have an own equation number:

```

\begin{gather}
...
\end{gather}

```

$$i_{11} = 0.25 \quad (\text{II-70})$$

$$i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11}$$

$$i_{31} = 0.33i_{22} \quad (\text{II-71})$$

For this example the code looks like:

```

1 \begin{gather}
2   i_{11} = 0.25\\
3   i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11}\nonumber\\
4   i_{31} = 0.33i_{22}
5 \end{gather}

```

- The `gather` environment has an implicit `{c}` horizontal alignment with no vertical column alignment. It is just like an one column array/table.
- A nonnumber-version `\begin{gather*}...\end{gather*}` exists. Look at section 26.4 on page 63 for an example.

26.2 gathered environment

The `gathered` environment is like the `aligned` or `alignat` environment. They use only so much horizontal space as the widest line needs. In difference to the `gather` environment it must be itself inside the math mode.

```

\begin{gathered}[c]
...
\end{gathered}

```

$$\begin{array}{c}
 i_{11} = 0.25 \\
 \hline
 i_{21} = \frac{1}{3}i_{11} \\
 i_{31} = 0.33i_{22}
 \end{array} \quad (\text{II-72})$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 \rule{2cm}{1pt}
3 \begin{gathered}
4 \quad i_{11}=0.25\\
5 \quad i_{21}=\frac{1}{3}i_{11}\\
6 \quad i_{31}=0.33i_{22}
7 \end{gathered}
8 \rule{2cm}{1pt}
9 \end{align}

```

The optional argument can be used for setting the vertical alignment which is by default c (centered). It can also be t for top or b for bottom.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & & A = a & \\
 & & & A = a & B = b \\
 \text{---} & A = a & B = b & C = c & \text{---} \\
 & B = b & C = c & & \\
 & C = c & & &
 \end{array} \tag{II-73}$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 \rule{1cm}{1pt}
3 \begin{gathered}[t]
4 \quad A=a\\
5 \quad B=b\\
6 \quad C=c
7 \end{gathered}
8 %
9 \begin{gathered}[c]
10 \quad A=a\\
11 \quad B=b\\
12 \quad C=c
13 \end{gathered}
14 %
15 \begin{gathered}[b]
16 \quad A=a\\
17 \quad B=b\\
18 \quad C=c
19 \end{gathered}
20 \rule{1cm}{1pt}
21 \end{align}

```

When using a square bracket as first character inside the environment, then everything is ignored by \mathcal{AMS} until a following closing bracket, because \mathcal{AMS} takes this as an optional argument:

$$\begin{array}{cc}
 A = a \\
 [B] \quad B = b \\
 [C] \quad C = c
 \end{array} \tag{II-74}$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 \begin{gathered}
3 [A]\quad A=a\\
4 [B]\quad B=b\\
5 [C]\quad C=c
6 \end{gathered}
7 \end{align}

```

The [A] is completely ignored, which can be avoided by using the optional argument [c] or at least an empty one directly after the `\begin{gather}`. Another possibility is using the package `empheq`, which fixes this behaviour by default.

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 [A] & A = a \\
 [B] & B = b \\
 [C] & C = c
 \end{array}
 \tag{II-75}$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 \begin{gathered}[]
3 [A]\quad A=a\\
4 [B]\quad B=b\\
5 [C]\quad C=c
6 \end{gathered}
7 \end{align}

```

26.3 *multline* environment

This is also like a multi line¹⁹ environment with a special vertical alignment. The **first** row is **left aligned**, the second and all following ones except the last one are **centered** and the **last** line is **right aligned**. It is often used to write extremely long formulas:

```

\begin{multline}
...
\end{multline}

```

```

1 \begin{multline}
2 A = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Delta x \left( a^2 + \left( a^2 + 2a \Delta x \right. \right.
3 \quad \left. \left. + \left( \Delta x \right)^2 \right) \right) \right) \left. \right.
4 + \left( a^2 + 2 \cdot 2a \Delta x + 2^2 \left( \Delta x \right)^2 \right) \left. \right.
5 + \left( a^2 + 2 \cdot 3a \Delta x + 3^2 \left( \Delta x \right)^2 \right) \left. \right.
6 + \ldots
7 \left. \left. \left( a^2 + 2 \cdot (n-1)a \Delta x + (n-1)^2 \left( \Delta x \right)^2 \right) \right. \right.
8 = \frac{1}{3} \left( b^3 - a^3 \right)
9 \end{multline}

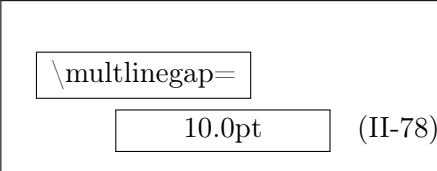
```

¹⁹It is no typo, the name of the environment is `multline`, no missing i here!

$$\begin{aligned}
 A = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Delta x & \left(a^2 + \left(a^2 + 2a\Delta x + (\Delta x)^2 \right) \right. \\
 & + \left(a^2 + 2 \cdot 2a\Delta x + 2^2 (\Delta x)^2 \right) \\
 & + \left(a^2 + 2 \cdot 3a\Delta x + 3^2 (\Delta x)^2 \right) \\
 & + \dots \\
 & \left. + \left(a^2 + 2 \cdot (n-1)a\Delta x + (n-1)^2 (\Delta x)^2 \right) \right) \\
 & = \frac{1}{3} (b^3 - a^3) \quad (\text{II-76})
 \end{aligned}$$


(II-77)

Figure 1: `multline` Alignment demo (the fourth row is shifted to the right with `\shoveright`)


(II-78)

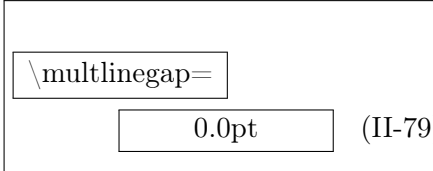

(II-79)

Figure 2: Demonstration of `\multlinegap` (default is 0pt)

- A nonnumber-version `\begin{multline*}...\end{multline*}` exists.
- By default only the last line (for right equation numbers) or the first line (for left equation numbers) gets a number, the others can't.
- The alignment of a single line can be changed with the command `\shoveright` (figure 1)
- The first line and the last line have a small gap to the text border.²⁰ See figure 2, where the length of `\multlinegap` is set to 0pt for the right one.

²⁰When the first (numbers left) or last line (numbers right) has an equation number then `\multlinegap` is not used for these ones, only for the line without a number.

26.3.1 Examples for `multline`

With the `multline` environment the equation 28 on page 29 looks like:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\Delta(f_{ij}f^{ij}) = 2 \left(\sum_{i<j} \chi_{ij}(\sigma_i - \sigma_j)^2 + f^{ij}\nabla_j\nabla_i(\Delta f) + \right. \\ \left. + \nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij} + f^{ij}f^k [2\nabla_i R_{jk} - \nabla_k R_{ij}] \right) \quad (\text{II-80}) \end{aligned}$$

which is again a bad typesetting because of the two unequal parentheses. Each one has a size which is correct for the line but not for the whole formula. L^AT_EX accepts only pairs of parentheses for one line and has an “empty” parentheses, the dot “`\left.`” or “`\right.`” to get only one of the “pair”. There are different solutions to get the right size of the parentheses. One of them is to use the `\vphantom` command, which reserves the vertical space without any horizontal one, like a vertical rule without any thickness. The sum symbol from the first line is the biggest one and responsible for the height, so this one is the argument of `\vphantom` which has to be placed anywhere.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\Delta(f_{ij}f^{ij}) = 2 \left(\sum_{i<j} \chi_{ij}(\sigma_i - \sigma_j)^2 + f^{ij}\nabla_j\nabla_i(\Delta f) + \right. \\ \left. + \nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij} + f^{ij}f^k [2\nabla_i R_{jk} - \nabla_k R_{ij}] \right) \quad (\text{II-81}) \end{aligned}$$

```

1 \begin{multline}
2 \frac{1}{2}\Delta(f_{ij}f^{ij}) =
3 2\left(\sum_{i<j}\chi_{ij}(\sigma_i -
4 \sigma_j)^2 + f^{ij}\nabla_j\nabla_i(\Delta f) + \right.
5 \left. + \nabla_k f_{ij}\nabla^k f^{ij} +
6 f^{ij}f^k [2\nabla_i R_{jk} -
7 \nabla_k R_{ij}] \right)
8 \end{multline}

```

Instead of using the `\vphantom` command it is also possible to use fixed-width parentheses, which is described in section 8 on page 27.

A math expression with a very long fraction like the following one, which runs out of the margin could be written as a multiplication to avoid the fraction line.

$$\frac{dG_\infty}{dn} = \frac{[1 - e^{-pn}][Q(n) - pR(n) + R'(n)]e^{-pn} - \left[-\frac{Q(n)e^{-pn}}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n)e^{-pn} - A\right]pe^{-pn}}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0 \quad (\text{II-82})$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \frac{\mathrm{d}G_{\infty}}{\mathrm{d}n} = \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} \cdot \left\{ [1 - e^{-pn}] [Q(n) - pR(n) + R'(n)] e^{-pn} \right.
3 \quad \left. - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
4 \quad - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \left. \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
5 \quad - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \left. \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
6 \end{equation}

```

With the `multline` environment it can then be split into two or more parts:

$$\frac{dG_{\infty}}{dn} = \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} \cdot \left\{ [1 - e^{-pn}] [Q(n) - pR(n) + R'(n)] e^{-pn} - \left[-\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \right\} = 0 \quad (\text{II-83})$$

```

1 \begin{multline}
2 \frac{\mathrm{d}G_{\infty}}{\mathrm{d}n} =
3 \quad \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} \cdot \left\{ [1 - e^{-pn}] [Q(n) - pR(n) + R'(n)] e^{-pn} \right.
4 \quad \left. - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
5 \quad - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \left. \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
6 \quad - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \left. \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
7 \quad - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \left. \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
8 \quad - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \left. \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
9 \quad - \left[ -\frac{Q(n)}{p} + \frac{Q(0)}{p} + R(n) e^{-pn} - A \right] p e^{-pn} \left. \right\} \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-pn})^2} = 0
10 \end{multline}

```

26.4 split environment

```

\begin{split}
...
\end{split}

```

From now on the counting of the equations changes. It is introduced with a foregoing command, which doesn't really make sense, it is only for demonstration:

```

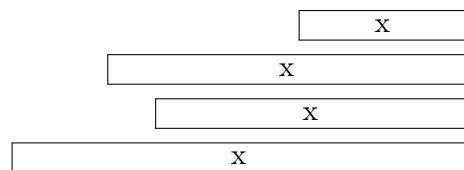
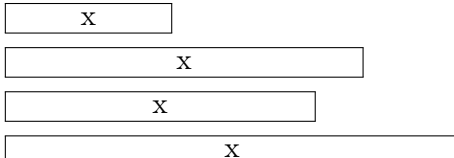
1 \makeatletter
2 \@removefromreset{equation}{section}
3 \makeatother

```

The `split` environment is like the `multline` or `array` environment for equations longer than the column width. Just like the `array` environment and in contrast to `multline`, `split` can only be used as **part of another environment**. `split` itself has no own numbering, this is given by the other environment. Without an ampersand all lines in the `split` environment are right-aligned and can be aligned at a special point by using an ampersand. In difference to the `aligned` environment (section 25.6 on page 57), the `split` environment permits more than one horizontal alignment.

It is important that the `split` environment has another behaviour when used inside one of the “old” L^AT_EX environments `\[...]` or `\begin{equation}`

... `\end{equation}`, in this case more than one horizontal alignment tabs are possible.

	<pre>\[\begin{split} \framebox[0.35\columnwidth]{x}\\ \framebox[0.75\columnwidth]{x}\\ \framebox[0.65\columnwidth]{x}\\ \framebox[0.95\columnwidth]{x} \end{split} \]</pre>
$\vec{a} =$ 	<pre>\[\begin{split} \vec{a} = {}&\framebox[0.35\columnwidth]{x}\\ &\framebox[0.75\columnwidth]{x}\\ &\framebox[0.65\columnwidth]{x}\\ &\framebox[0.95\columnwidth]{x} \end{split} \]</pre>

The following example shows the `split` environment as part of the `equation` environment:

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_1 &= \left| \int_0^1 (f(x) - g(x)) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_1^2 (g(x) - h(x)) \, dx \right| \\
 &= \left| \int_0^1 (x^2 - 3x) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_1^2 (x^2 - 5x + 6) \, dx \right| \\
 &= \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{3}{2}x^2 \right|_0^1 + \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + 6x \right|_1^2 \\
 &= \left| \frac{1}{3} - \frac{3}{2} \right| + \left| \frac{8}{3} - \frac{20}{2} + 12 - \left(\frac{1}{3} - \frac{5}{2} + 6 \right) \right| \\
 &= \left| -\frac{7}{6} \right| + \left| \frac{14}{3} - \frac{23}{6} \right| = \frac{7}{6} + \frac{5}{6} = 2 \text{ FE}
 \end{aligned} \tag{II-84}$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2   \begin{split}
3     A_{1} &= \left| \int_{0}^{1} (f(x)-g(x)) \, \mathrm{d}x \right| + \left| \int_{1}^{2} (g(x)-h(x)) \, \mathrm{d}x \right| \\
4           &= \left| \int_{0}^{1} (x^2-3x) \, \mathrm{d}x \right| + \left| \int_{1}^{2} (x^2-5x+6) \, \mathrm{d}x \right| \\
5           &= \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{3}{2}x^2 \right|_0^1 + \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + 6x \right|_1^2 \\
6           &= \left| \frac{1}{3} - \frac{3}{2} \right| + \left| \frac{8}{3} - \frac{20}{2} + 12 - \left( \frac{1}{3} - \frac{5}{2} + 6 \right) \right| \\
7           &= \left| -\frac{7}{6} \right| + \left| \frac{14}{3} - \frac{23}{6} \right| = \frac{7}{6} + \frac{5}{6} = 2 \text{ FE}
8         \end{split}
9       \end{equation}

```


The same using the `array` environment with `{r1}`-alignment instead of `split` gives same horizontal alignment, but another vertical spacing²¹ and the symbols are only in scriptsize and not textsize:²²

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_1 &= \left| \int_0^1 (f(x) - g(x)) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_1^2 (g(x) - h(x)) \, dx \right| \\
 &= \left| \int_0^1 (x^2 - 3x) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_1^2 (x^2 - 5x + 6) \, dx \right| \\
 &= \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{3}{2}x^2 \right|_0^1 + \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + 6x \right|_1^2 \\
 &= \left| \frac{1}{3} - \frac{3}{2} \right| + \left| \frac{8}{3} - \frac{20}{2} + 12 - \left(\frac{1}{3} - \frac{5}{2} + 6 \right) \right| \\
 &= \left| -\frac{7}{6} \right| + \left| \frac{14}{3} - \frac{23}{6} \right| = \frac{7}{6} + \frac{5}{6} = 2 \text{ FE}
 \end{aligned} \tag{II-85}$$

Compare the following two examples for typesetting the minus sign. In the first case it is typeset similar to the plus character, and in the second example it is typeset without the additional space for a binary math atom.

$$\begin{aligned}
 a &= -b + c \\
 &\quad -d + e
 \end{aligned}$$

(II-86)

$$\begin{aligned}
 a &= -b + c \\
 &\quad -d + e
 \end{aligned}$$

(II-87)

```

1 \begin{align}
2 \begin{split}
3 a = {} & \& -b + c \\
4 & \& -d + e
5 \end{split}
6 \end{align}
7 %
8 \begin{align}
9 \begin{split}
10 a = {} & \& {-}b + c \\
11 & \& {-}d + e
12 \end{split}
13 \end{align}

```

- There exists no starred version (`\begin{split*}`) of the `split` environment.

26.5 cases environment

This gives support for an often used mathematical construct. You can also choose the more than once described way to convert some text into math, like

```

$x=\begin{cases}
0 & \text{if } A=\dots \\
1 & \text{if } B=\dots \\
x & \text{if this runs with as much text as you like,} \\
& \text{but without an automatic linebreak, it runs out} \\
& \text{of page....}
\end{cases}$

```

²¹Can be changed with `\renewcommand\arraystretch{1.5}`

²²See section 12 on page 39

which gives equation II-88. It is obvious what the problem is.

$$x = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if A=...} \\ 1 & \text{if B=...} \\ x & \text{this runs with as much text as you like, but without a linebreak, it runs out of page....} \end{cases} \quad (\text{II-88})$$

In this case it is better to use a parbox for the text part with a `flushleft` command for a better view.

$$x = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if A=...} \\ 1 & \text{if B=...} \\ x & \begin{array}{l} \text{this runs with as much text as} \\ \text{you like, but without an} \\ \text{automatic linebreak, it runs} \\ \text{out of page....} \end{array} \end{cases} \quad (\text{II-89})$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 x=\begin{cases}
3   0 & \text{\text{if A=...}}\\
4   1 & \text{\text{if B=...}}\\
5   x & \parbox{5cm}{\%
6     \flushleft\%
7       this runs with as much text as you like,
8       but without an automatic linebreak,
9       it runs out of page....}\%
10 \end{cases}
11 \end{equation}

```

From now on the counting of the equations changes. It is introduced with a foregoing command, which doesn't really make sense, it is only for demonstration:

```

1 \renewcommand\theequation{\arabic{equation}}

```

26.6 Matrix environments

<code>\Vmatrix</code>	$\left\ \begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix} \right\ $	<code>\Bmatrix</code>	$\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$	<code>\matrix</code>	$\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix}$
<code>\vmatrix</code>	$\left \begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix} \right $	<code>\bmatrix</code>	$\left[\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix} \right]$	<code>\pmatrix</code>	$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$
				<code>\smallmatrix</code>	$\begin{smallmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{smallmatrix}$

Table 16: Matrix environments

All matrix environments can be nested and an element may also contain any other math environment, so that very complex structures are possible. By default all cells have a centered alignment, which is often not the best when having different decimal numbers or plus/minus values. Changing the alignment to right (not for the `smallmatrix`) is possible with

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \def\env@matrix{\hskip -\arraycolsep
3   \let\@ifnextchar\new@ifnextchar
4   \array{*\c@MaxMatrixCols r}}
5 \makeatother

```

`matrix`
`vmatrix`
`Vmatrix`
`bmatrix`
`Bmatrix`
`pmatrix`
`smallmatrix`

The special matrix environment `smallmatrix`, which decreases horizontal and vertical space is typeset in scriptstyle. The `smallmatrix` environment makes some sense in the inline mode to decrease the line height. For dots over several columns look for `\hdotsfor` in the following section.

27 Vertical whitespace

See section 11.5 on page 36 for the lengths which control the vertical whitespace. There is no difference to $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\mathcal{m}\mathcal{a}\mathcal{t}\mathcal{h}$.

28 Dots

In addition to section 13 on page 40 $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\mathcal{m}\mathcal{a}\mathcal{t}\mathcal{h}$ has two more commands for dots: `\dddot{...}`²³ and `\ddddot{...}`

`\dddot{y}`: \ddot{y}

`\ddddot{y}`: \ddot{y}

Another interesting dot command is `\hdotsfor` with the syntax:

```

1 \hdotsfor[<spacing factor>]{<number of columns>}

```

With the spacing factor the width of the dots can be stretched or shrunk. The number of columns allows a continuing dotted line over more columns. Equation 90 shows the definition of a tridiagonal matrix.

²³already mentioned in section 14

$$\underline{A} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & 0 & \dots & \dots & \dots & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & a_{32} & a_{33} & a_{34} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & a_{n-2,n-3} & a_{n-2,n-2} & a_{n-2,n-1} & 0 \\ 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 & a_{n-1,n-2} & a_{n-1,n-1} & a_{n-1,n} \\ 0 & \dots & \dots & \dots & 0 & a_{n,n-1} & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \quad (90)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \underline{A}=\left[\begin{array}{cccccc}
3 a_{11} & a_{12} & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 0 \\
4 a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & 0 \\
5 0 & a_{32} & a_{33} & a_{34} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
6 \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
7 \hdotsfor{7}\cr\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
8 0 & \ldots & 0 & a_{n-2,n-3} & a_{n-2,n-2} & a_{n-2,n-1} & 0 \\
9 0 & \ldots & \ldots & 0 & a_{n-1,n-2} & a_{n-1,n-1} & a_{n-1,n} \\
10 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 0 & a_{n,n-1} & a_{nn} \\
11 \end{array}\right]
12 \end{equation}

```

29 fraction commands

29.1 Standard

Additional to the font size problem described in subsection 2.2 on page 11 $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math supports some more commands for fractions. The `\frac` command described in [7], does no more exist in $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math.

- The global fraction definition has five parameters

```

1 \genfrac{<left delim>}{<right delim>}{<thickness>}{<mathstyle>}{<nominator>}{<denominator>}

```

where thickness can have any length with a valid unit like

$$\genfrac{}{}{1pt}{}{x^2+x+1}{3x-2} \rightarrow \frac{x^2+x+1}{3x-2}$$

- `\cfrac` (continued fraction) which is by default set in the display

mathstyle and useful for fractions like

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4} + \frac{1}{\dots}}}} \quad (91)$$

which looks with the default `\frac` command like

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4 + \frac{1}{\dots}}}}}} \quad (92)$$

where the mathstyle decreases for every new level in the fraction. The `\cfrac` command can be called with an optional parameter which defines the placing of the nominator, which can be `[l]`eft, `[r]`ight or `[c]`enter (the default - see equation 91):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4} + \frac{1}{\dots}}}} & & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4} + \frac{1}{\dots}}}} \\ & & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4} + \frac{1}{\dots}}}} \\ & & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4} + \frac{1}{\dots}}}} \end{array}$$

- `\dfrac` which takes by default the displaystyle, so that fractions in inline mode $\frac{1}{2}$ have the same size than in display mode.
- `\tfrac` (vice versa to `\dfrac`) which takes by default the scriptstyle, so that fractions in display mode have the same size than in inline mode.

$$\begin{array}{cc} \frac{2}{3} & \text{\tt \frac{2}{3}} \\ \frac{2}{3} & \text{\tt \frac{2}{3}} \end{array}$$

29.2 Binoms

They are like fractions without a rule and its syntax is different to the `\choose` command from standard L^AT_EX (see section 2.2 on page 11). $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math provides three different commands for binoms just like the ones for fractions.

`\binom`
`\dbinom`
`\tbinom`

Command	Inlinemath	Displaymath
<code>\binom{m}{n}</code>	$\binom{m}{n}$	$\binom{m}{n}$
<code>\dbinom{m}{n}</code>	$\binom{m}{n}$	$\binom{m}{n}$
<code>\tbinom{m}{n}</code>	$\binom{m}{n}$	$\binom{m}{n}$

Table 17: binom commands

30 Roots

The typesetting for roots is sometimes not the best. Some solutions for better typesetting are described in section 7 on page 26 for standard L^AT_EX. $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math has some more commands for the n -th root: `\leftroot`
`\uproot`

```
1 \sqrt[\leftroot<number>\uproot<number><root>]{<...>}
```

`<number>` indicates a value for the points²⁴ of which the root can be adjusted to the left and/or to the top, e.g., $\sqrt[k_n]{a}$ (`\sqrt[k_n]{a}`) has a too deep exponent, whereas $\sqrt[k_n]{a}$ (`\sqrt[\uproot{2}]{a}`) looks nicer.

30.1 Roots with `\smash` command

The default for a root with λ_{k_i} as root argument looks like $\sqrt{\lambda_{k_i}}$, which may be not the best typesetting. It is possible to reduce the lowest point of the root to the baseline with the `\smash` command: $\sqrt{\lambda_{k_i}} \xrightarrow{\text{with } \texttt{\smash}} \sqrt{\lambda_{k_i}}$ `\smash`

The syntax of the `\smash` command²⁵ renewed by the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package is

```
1 \smash[<position>]{<argument>}
```

The optional argument for the position can be:

t keeps the bottom and annihilates the top

b keeps the top and annihilates the bottom

tb annihilates top and bottom (the default)

31 Accents

With the macro `\mathaccent` it is easy to define new accent types, for example

```
1 \def\dotcup{${\mathaccent\cdot}\cup$}
```

²⁴In PostScript units (bp – Big Points).

²⁵In `latex.ltx` `\smash` is defined without an optional argument.

⌋

Overwriting of two symbols is also possible:



In this case the second symbol has to be shifted to the left for a length of $5mu$ (mu: math unit).

```

1 \def\curvearrowleftrighth{\%
2   \ensuremath{\%
3     \mathaccent\curvearrowright{\mkern-5mu\curvearrowleft
4     }\%
5   }

```

For other possibilities to define new accents see section 47.1 on page 98.

32 \mod command

In standard L^AT_EX the modulo command is not an operator, though it is often used in formulas. $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math provides two (three) different commands for modulo, which are listed in tabular 18.

- They all insert some useful space before and behind the mod-operator.

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 a\backslash\mathrm{mod}\{n^2\}=b & \rightarrow & a \bmod n^2 = b \\
 a\backslash\mathrm{pmod}\{n^2\}=b & \rightarrow & a \pmod{n^2} = b \\
 a\backslash\mathrm{pod}\{n^2\}=b & \rightarrow & a (n^2) = b
 \end{array}$$

Table 18: The modulo commands and their meaning

33 Equation numbering

See section 3.3 on page 16 for equation numbering. It is mostly the same, `\numberwithin` only one command is new to $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math. If you want a numbering like “44” then write either in the preamble or like this example anywhere in your doc:

```

1 \numberwithin{equation}{section}

```

From now on the numbering looks like equation 44 on page 53. For the book-class you can get the same for chapters.

If you want to get rid of the parentheses then write in the preamble:

```

1 \makeatletter
2 \def\tagform@#1{\maketag@@@{\ignorespaces#1\unskip\
3   @@italiccorr}}
4 \makeatother

```

Now the following four subequation numbers have no parentheses.

33.1 Subequations

Amsmath supports this with the environment `subequation`. For example:

$$y = d \quad 33.93a$$

$$y = cx + d \quad 33.93b$$

$$y = bx^2 + cx + d \quad 33.93c$$

$$y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \quad 33.93d$$

```

1 \begin{subequations}
2 \begin{align}
3 y &= d\\
4 y &= cx+d\\
5 y &= bx^2+cx+d\\
6 y &= ax^3+bx^2+cx+d
7 \end{align}
8 \end{subequations}

```

Inside of subequations only complete other environments (`\begin{...}` ... `\end{...}`) are possible.

```

1 \renewcommand{\theequation}{%
2 \theparentequation}-\arabic{equation}%
3 }

```

$$y = d \quad (33.94-1)$$

$$y = cx + d \quad (33.94-2)$$

$$y = bx^2 + cx + d \quad (33.94-3)$$

$$y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \quad (33.94-4)$$

A ref to a subequation is possible like the one to equation 33.94-2. The environment chooses the same counter “`equation`” but saves the old value into “`parentequation`”.

It is also possible to place two equations side by side with counting as subfigures:

$$y = f(x) \quad (33.95a) \qquad y = f(z) \quad (33.95b)$$

In this case, the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math internal subfigure counter cannot be used and an own counter has to be defined:

```

1 \newcounter{mySubCounter}
2 \newcommand{\twocoleqn}[2]{
3   \setcounter{mySubCounter}{0}%
4   \let\OldTheEquation\theequation%
5   \renewcommand{\theequation}{\OldTheEquation\alph{
6     mySubCounter}}%
7   \noindent%

```



```

7 \begin{minipage}{.49\textwidth}
8   \begin{equation}\refstepcounter{mySubCounter}
9     #1
10    \end{equation}
11  \end{minipage}\hfill%
12  \addtocounter{equation}{-1}%
13  \begin{minipage}{.49\textwidth}
14    \begin{equation}\refstepcounter{mySubCounter}
15      #2
16    \end{equation}
17  \end{minipage}%
18  \let\theequation\OldTheEquation
19 }
20 [ ... ]
21 \twocoleqn{y=f(x)}{y=f(z)}

```

34 Labels and tags

For the `\label` command see section 3.4 on page 18, it is just the same `\tag` behaviour. $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math allows to define own single “equation numbers” with the `\tag` command.

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 f(x) = a & \text{(linear)} \\
 g(x) = dx^2 + cx + b & \text{(quadratic)} \\
 h(x) = \sin x & \text{trigonometric}
 \end{array}$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 f(x) &= a\tag{linear}\label{eq:linear}\\
3 g(x) &= \mathrm{d}x^2 + cx + b\tag{quadratic}\label{eq:quadratic}\\
4 h(x) &= \sin x\tag{*trigonometric}
5 \end{align}

```

- The `\tag` command is also possible for unnumbered equations, \LaTeX changes the behaviour when a tag is detected.
- There exists a starred version `\tag{*}{...}`, which supresses any annotations like parentheses for equation numbers.
- There exist two package options for tags, `ctagsplit` and `righttag` (look at the beginning of this part on page 51).

35 Limits

By default the `\sum`/`\prod` has the limits above/below and the integral at the side. To get the same behaviour for all symbols which can have limits load the package $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math in the preamble as

```
1 \usepackage[sumlimits,intlimits]{amsmath}
```

There exist also options for the vice versa (see page 51). See also Section 41 for the additional commands `\underset` and `\overset`.

35.1 Multiple limits

For general information about limits read section 2.1 on page 11. Standard L^AT_EX provides the `\atop` command for multiple limits (section 6.1 on page 25). \mathcal{M} Smath has an additional command for that, which can have several lines with the following syntax:

```
1 \substack{...\allowbreak...\allowbreak}
```

The environments described in [7]

```
1 \begin{Sb} ... \end{Sb}
2 \begin{Sp} ... \end{Sp}
```

```
\substack
\begin{Sb}
...
\end{Sb}
\begin{Sp}
...
\end{Sp}
```

are obsolete and no more part of \mathcal{M} Smath.

The example equation 21 on page 25 with the `\substack` command looks like:

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq p \\ 1 \leq j \leq q \\ 1 \leq k \leq r}} a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki} \quad (35.1)$$

Insert these limits in the following way:

```
1 \begin{equation}
2   \sum_{%
3     \substack{1 \leq i \leq p \\\
4               1 \leq j \leq q \\\
5               1 \leq k \leq r}
6   }%
7   a_{ij} b_{jk} c_{ki}
8 \end{equation}
```

35.2 Problems

There are still some problems with limits and the following math expression. For example:

$$X = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq j \leq n} X_{ij}$$

```
1 \[
2 X = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq j \leq n} X_{ij}
3 \]
```

does not look nice because of the long limit. Using a `\makebox` also does not really solve the problem, because `\makebox` is in TeX horizontal mode and knows nothing about the appropriate math font size, because limits have a smaller font size. It is better to define a `\mathclap` macro, similar to the two macros `\llap` and `\rlap` and uses the also new defined `\mathclap` macro:

```

1 \def\mathllap{\mathpalette\mathllapinternal}
2 \def\mathllapinternal#1#2{%
3   \llap{$\mathsurround=0pt#1#2}$}% $
4 }
5 \def\clap#1{\hbox to 0pt{\hss#1\hss}}
6 \def\mathclap{\mathpalette\mathclapinternal}
7 \def\mathclapinternal#1#2{%
8   \clap{$\mathsurround=0pt#1#2}$}%
9 }
10 \def\mathrlap{\mathpalette\mathrlapinternal}
11 \def\mathrlapinternal#1#2{%
12   \rlap{$\mathsurround=0pt#1#2}$}% $
13 }

```

Now we can write limits which have a boxwidth of 0pt and the right font size and the following math expression appears just behind the symbol:

$$X = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq j \leq n} X_{ij}$$

```

1 \[
2 X = \sum_{\mathclap{1 \leq i \leq j \leq n}} X_{ij}
3 \]

```

Another problem occurs when having operators with stacked limits in braces:

$$\left[\sum_{\substack{i,j \\ i>j}} \dots \right] \quad (35.2)$$

This case is not easy to handle when some other math expressions are around the braces which should be on the same baseline. However, the following may help in some cases to get better looking braces.

$$foo \left[\sum_{\substack{i,j \\ i>j}} \dots \right] bar \quad (35.3)$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 foo \left[ \begin{array}{c} \displaystyle \sum_{\substack{i,j \\ i>j}} \dots \end{array} \right] bar
3 \end{align}

```

35.3 \sideset

This is a command for a very special purpose, to combine over/under limits with superscript/subscripts for the sum-symbol. For example: it is not `\sideset`

possible to place the prime for the equation 35.4 near to the sum symbol, because it becomes an upper limit when writing without an preceding `{}`.

$$\sum_{\substack{n < k \\ n \text{ odd}}} 'nE_n \quad (35.4)$$

The command `\sideset` has the syntax

```
1 \sideset{<before>}{<behind>}
```

It can place characters on all four corners of the sum-symbol:

$$\begin{array}{c} UpperLeft \\ LowerLeft \end{array} \sum_{\begin{array}{c} B \\ LowerRight \end{array}}^{\begin{array}{c} T \\ UpperRight \end{array}}$$

```
1 \[
2 \sideset{_{LowerLeft}^{\UpperLeft}}{_{LowerRight}^{\UpperRight}}
  \sum_{B}^T nE_n
3 \]
```

Now it is possible to write the equation 35.4 in a proper way with the command `\sideset{}{'}` before the sum symbol:

$$\sum_{\substack{n < k \\ n \text{ odd}}} 'nE_n \quad (35.5)$$

36 Operator names

By default variables are written in italic and operator names in upright mode, like $y = \sin(x)$.²⁶ This happens only for the known operator names, but creating a new one is very easy with:

```
1 \newcommand{\mysin}{\operatorname{mysin}}
```

Now `\mysin` is also written in upright mode $y = \mysin(x)$ and with some additional space before and behind.

It is obvious, that only those names can be defined as new operator names which are not commands in another way. Instead of using the new definition as an operator, it is also possible to use the text mode. But it is better to have all operators of the same type, so that changing the style will have an effect for all operators.

The new defined operator names cannot have limits, only superscript/subscript is possible. `amsopn.sty` has an additional command `\operatornamewithlimits`, which supports over/under limits like the one from `\int` or `\sum`.

²⁶See section 16 on page 44, where all the standard L^AT_EX known operator names are listed. Package `AMSmath` has some more (see documentation).

It is also possible to use the macro `\mathop` to declare anything as operator, like

$${}_1\mathrm{B}$$

```
1 \[ \sideset{_{1}}{\}\{\mathop{\mathrm{B}}\}\} \]
```

With this definition it is possible to use `\sideset` for a forgoing index, which is only possible for an operator.

For a real $\mathrm{\LaTeX}$ definition have a look at section 16 on page 44.

37 Text in math mode

If you need complex structures between formulas, look also at section 65.

37.1 `\text` command

This is the equivalent command to `\mathrm` or `\mbox` from the standard $\mathrm{\LaTeX}$ (section 9 on page 31) with the exception, that `\mathrm` always uses the roman font and `\text` the actual one and that the font size is different when used in super- and subscript.

`\text`
`\mbox`
`\textnormal`
`\mathrm`

For example: $f(x) = x$ this was math.

$A_{\text{text}}^{\text{text}}$ $A_{\text{text}}^{\text{text}}$ $A_{\text{text}}^{\text{text}}$ $A_{\text{text}}^{\text{text}}$

```
1 $\boxed{f(x)=x\quad\text{this was math}}$
2
3 {\sffamily\huge
4 $A^{\mbox{text}}_{\mbox{text}}\quad
5 $A^{\text{text}}_{\text{text}}\quad
6 $A^{\textnormal{text}}_{\textnormal{text}}\quad
7 $A^{\mathrm{text}}_{\mathrm{text}}$
8 }
```

The `\text` macro can be used at any place and can be in some cases a better solution as `\intertext` (see section 37.2).

$$12(x-1) + 20(y-3) + 14(z-2) = 0$$

and

$$6x + 10y + 7z = 0$$

$$12(x-1) + 20(y-3) + 14(z-2) = 0 \tag{37.1}$$

and

$$6x + 10y + 7z = 0 \tag{37.2}$$

```

1 \begin{flalign*}
2      && 12(x-1) + 20(y-3) + 14(z-2) &= 0 && \\
3 \text{\text{and}} && 6x + 10y + 7z &= 0 && \\
4 \end{flalign*}

5
6 \begin{align}
7      && 12(x-1) + 20(y-3) + 14(z-2) &= 0 \\
8 \text{\text{and}} && 6x + 10y + 7z &= 0 \\
9 \end{align}

```

37.2 \intertext command

This is useful when you want to place some text between two parts of math stuff without leaving the math mode, like the name “intertext” says. For example we write the equation [II-84 on page 64](#) with an additional command after the second line.

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_1 &= \left| \int_0^1 (f(x) - g(x)) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_1^2 (g(x) - h(x)) \, dx \right| \\
 &= \left| \int_0^1 (x^2 - 3x) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_1^2 (x^2 - 5x + 6) \, dx \right|
 \end{aligned}$$

Now the limits of the integrals are used

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{3}{2}x^2 \right|_0^1 + \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + 6x \right|_1^2 \\
 &= \left| \frac{1}{3} - \frac{3}{2} \right| + \left| \frac{8}{3} - \frac{20}{2} + 12 - \left(\frac{1}{3} - \frac{5}{2} + 6 \right) \right| \\
 &= \left| -\frac{7}{6} \right| + \left| \frac{14}{3} - \frac{23}{6} \right| = \frac{7}{6} + \frac{5}{6} = 2 \text{ FE}
 \end{aligned}$$

The code looks like:

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \begin{split}
3 A_{1} &= \left| \int_{0}^{1} (f(x)-g(x)) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_{1}^{2} (g(x)-h(x)) \, dx \right| \\
4 &= \left| \int_{0}^{1} (x^2-3x) \, dx \right| + \left| \int_{1}^{2} (x^2-5x+6) \, dx \right| \\
5 \intertext{Now the limits of the integrals are used}
6 &= \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{3}{2}x^2 \right|_0^1 + \left| \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + 6x \right|_1^2 \\
7 &= \left| \frac{1}{3} - \frac{3}{2} \right| + \left| \frac{8}{3} - \frac{20}{2} + 12 - \left( \frac{1}{3} - \frac{5}{2} + 6 \right) \right| \\
8 &= \left| -\frac{7}{6} \right| + \left| \frac{14}{3} - \frac{23}{6} \right| = \frac{7}{6} + \frac{5}{6} = 2 \text{ FE}
\end{split}
\end{equation}

```

```

9      \left( \frac{1}{3}-\frac{5}{2}+6\right) \right| \\\
10      & = \left| -\frac{7}{6}\right| +\left| \frac{14}{3}-\frac{23}{6}\right| \\
11      \right| =\frac{7}{6}+ \\
12      \frac{5}{6}=2\,, \text{\texttt{\textit{FE}}} \\
13 \end{split} \\
\end{equation}

```

Writing very long text is possible by using a `parbox`, see section 9 on page 31 for an example with `\textrm`, which behaves in the same way as `\text`.

38 Extensible arrows

To write something like $\frac{\text{above the arrow}}{\text{below}}$ you can use the following macro

`\xrightarrow`
`\xleftarrow`
`\xmapsto`

`\xrightarrow[\text{below}]{\text{above the arrow}}`

and the same with `\xleftarrow`. You can define your own extensible arrow macros if you need other than these two predefined ones. To get a doublelined extensible arrow like `\Longlefttrightarrow` (\Longleftrightarrow) but with the same behaviour as an extensible one, write in the preamble

```

1 \newcommand\xLongLeftRightArrow[2][\%
2   \ext@arrow 0055{\LongLeftRightArrowfill@}{#1}{#2}}
3 \def\LongLeftRightArrowfill@{\%
4   \arrowfill@{\Leftarrow\Relbar\Rightarrow}
5 \newcommand\xlonglefttrightarrow[2][\%
6   \ext@arrow 0055{\longlefttrightarrowfill@}{#1}{#2}}
7 \def\longlefttrightarrowfill@{\%
8   \arrowfill@{\leftarrow\relbar\rightarrow}

```

The three parts `\Leftarrow\Relbar\Rightarrow` define left/middle/right of the arrow, where the middle part would be stretched in a way that the arrow is at least as long as the text above and/or below it. This macro has one optional and one standard parameter. The optional one is written below and the standard one above this arrow. Now we can write

`\xLongLeftRightArrow[\text{below}]{\text{above the arrow}}`
`\xlonglefttrightarrow[\text{below}]{\text{above the arrow}}`

to get $\frac{\text{above the arrow}}{\text{below}}$ or $\frac{\text{above the arrow}}{\text{below}}$. The “number” 0055 after `\ext@arrow` defines the position relative to the extended arrow and is not a number but four parameters for additional space in the math unit μ .

```

1 \def\mapstofill@{\%
2   \arrowfill@{\mapstochar\relbar}\relbar\rightarrow}
3 \newcommand*\xmapsto[2][\%
4   \ext@arrow <four digits>\mapstofill@{#1}{#2}}

```

<code>\ext@arrow 0000\$</code>	$\overrightarrow{\hspace{1cm}}$
<code>\ext@arrow 9000\$</code>	$\underleftarrow{\hspace{1cm}}$
<code>\ext@arrow 0900\$</code>	$\overleftrightarrow{\hspace{1cm}}$
<code>\ext@arrow 0009\$</code>	$\overrightarrow{\hspace{1cm}}$
<code>\ext@arrow 0090\$</code>	$\underleftarrow{\hspace{1cm}}$
<code>\ext@arrow 0099\$</code>	$\overleftrightarrow{\hspace{1cm}}$
<code>\ext@arrow 9999\$</code>	$\underleftarrow{\hspace{1cm}}$

- 1st digit: space left
- 2nd digit: space right
- 3rd digit: space left and right
- 4th digit: space relative to the tip of the “arrow”

The two macros `\xrightarrow` and `\xleftarrow` are defined as:

```

1 \newcommand{\xrightarrow}[2][\ext@arrow 0359\
  rightarrowfill@{#1}{#2}]
2 \newcommand{\xleftarrow}[2][\ext@arrow 3095\leftarrowfill@
  {#1}{#2}]

```

39 Frames

$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math knows the macro `\boxed` which can be used for inline $a\boxed{b+c}$ and displayed math expressions:

$$\boxed{f(x) = \int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x^2} dt = 1} \quad (39.1)$$


```

1 \begin{align}
2 \boxed{f(x)=\int_1^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\,dx}
3 \end{align}

```

For coloured boxes use package `empheq`. For an example see section 47.11 on page 106.

40 Greek letters

The $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package simulates a bold font for the greek letters by writing a greek character twice with a small kerning. This is done with the macro `\pmb{<letter>}`. The `\mathbf{<character>}` doesn't work with lower greek character. However, using the `\boldsymbol` macro from $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math is the better way when the font has a bold symbol.

Uppercase greek letters are by default in upright mode. $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math supports also such letters in italic mode with a preceding `var` e.g., `\varGamma`

<i>letter</i>	<code>\pmb{letter}</code>	<code>\boldsymbol{letter}</code>	<i>letter</i>	<i>italic</i>
α	α	α	Γ	Γ
β	β	β	Δ	Δ
γ	γ	γ	Θ	Θ
δ	δ	δ	Λ	Λ
ϵ	ϵ	ϵ	Ξ	Ξ
ε	ε	ε	Π	Π
ζ	ζ	ζ	Σ	Σ
η	η	η	Υ	Υ
θ	θ	θ	Φ	Φ
ϑ	ϑ	ϑ	Ψ	Ψ
ι	ι	ι	Ω	Ω
...		

41 Miscellaneous commands

There are several commands which can be used in math mode:

Some examples are shown in table 19.

<code>\underset{under}{baseline}</code>	<i>baseline</i> <i>under</i>
<code>\overset{over}{baseline}</code>	<i>over</i> <i>baseline</i>
<code>\boldsymbol{\Omega}</code>	Ω

Table 19: Different mathcommands

`\underset` is a useful macro for having limits under non-operators (see page 99). `\boldsymbol` can be used for a math symbol that remains unaffected by `\mathbf` if the current math font set includes a bold version of that symbol.

42 Problems with amsmath

`\mathcal{M}` is an excellent package with some “funny features”. When using an `align` environment inside a `gather` environment, it should be centered just like the other lines. This is only true, when there is a number/tag or an additional ampersand:

$$\begin{aligned} m_2 &= m_2' + m_2'' \\ &= \frac{V_2'}{v_2'} + \frac{V_2''}{v_2''} \\ \Rightarrow m_2 v_2' &= V - V_2'' + V_2'' \frac{v_2'}{v_2''} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} m_2 &= m_2' + m_2'' \\ &= \frac{V_2'}{v_2'} + \frac{V_2''}{v_2''} \\ \Rightarrow m_2 v_2' &= V - V_2'' + V_2'' \frac{v_2'}{v_2''} \end{aligned}$$

```

1 \begin{gather*}
2   \begin{align*}
3     m_2 &= m_2' + m_2'' \\
4         &= \frac{V_2'}{v_2'} + \frac{V_2''}{v_2''} \\
5   \end{align*} \\
6   \Rightarrow m_2 v_2' &= V - V_2'' + V_2'' \frac{v_2'}{v_2''} \\
7 \end{gather*}
8 \begin{gather*}
9   \begin{align*}
10    m_2 &= m_2' + m_2'' \\
11        &= \frac{V_2'}{v_2'} + \frac{V_2''}{v_2''} & \%<<<====
12   \end{align*} \\
13   \Rightarrow m_2 v_2' &= V - V_2'' + V_2'' \frac{v_2'}{v_2''} \\
14 \end{gather*}

```

This effect depends to the horizontal width, which is wrong in the first example, in fact of a missing tag or number the right whitespace is cut, but

the left one is still there. The additional ampersand prevents $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math to change the right margin.

Another kind of curiosity is the following example, which depends to the same problem of cutting whitespace only on one side.

$a = b$ $c = d$
$a = b$ $c = d$

```

1 \bigskip\noindent\fbbox{%
2 \begin{minipage}{10cm}
3 \begin{align*}
4   a&=b \ \ c&=d
5 \end{align*}
6 \end{minipage}}
7
8 \noindent\fbbox{%
9 \begin{minipage}{10cm}
10 \noindent\begin{align*}
11   a&=b \ \ c&=d
12 \end{align*}
13 \end{minipage}}
```

Part III

T_EX and math

There is in general no need to use the T_EX macros, because the ones defined with L^AT_EX or with $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math are much more useful. Nevertheless there may be situations, where someone has to use one of the T_EX macros or special T_EX math length. One can not expect, that all macros work in the usual way, a lot of them are redefined by L^AT_EX or $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math. On the other hand some of these basic macros or length definitions are used in the T_EX way, so it might be interesting to have all declared in a short way for some information.

43 Length registers**43.1 `\abovedisplayshortskip`**

A length with glue, see section 11.5.1 for an example.

43.2 `\abovedisplayskip`

A length with glue, see section 11.5.1 for an example.

43.3 `\belowdisplayshortskip`

A length with glue, see section 11.5.1 for an example.

43.4 `\belowdisplayskip`

A length with glue, see section 11.5.1 for an example.

43.5 `\delimiterfactor`

The height of a delimiter is often not optimally calculated by T_EX. In some cases it is too short. With `\delimiterfactor` one can correct this height. The `delimiterheight` is $< \text{calculated height} > \cdot < \#1 > / 1000$ where `#1` is the parameter of `\delimiterfactor`. The default value is 901.

$$y = \begin{cases} x^2 + 2x & \text{if } x < 0, \\ x^3 & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1, \\ x^2 + x & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2, \\ x^3 - x^2 & \text{if } 2 \leq x. \end{cases}$$

```

1 \[
2 y = \left\{ %
3 \begin{array}{ll}
4   x^2+2x & \text{\textit{if } }x<0,\\
5   x^3    & \text{\textit{if } }0\le x<1,\\
6   x^2+x  & \text{\textit{if } }1\le x<2,\\
7   x^3-x^2 & \text{\textit{if } }2\le x.
8 \end{array} %
9 \right.
10 \]
```

$$y = \begin{cases} x^2 + 2x & \text{if } x < 0, \\ x^3 & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1, \\ x^2 + x & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2, \\ x^3 - x^2 & \text{if } 2 \leq x. \end{cases}$$

```

1 \[
2 \delimiterfactor=1500
3 y = \left\{ %
4 \begin{array}{ll}
5   x^2+2x & \text{\texttrm{if } }x<0,\\
6   x^3     & \text{\texttrm{if } }0\le x<1,\\
7   x^2+x   & \text{\texttrm{if } }1\le x<2,\\
8   x^3-x^2 & \text{\texttrm{if } }2\le x.
9 \end{array} %
10 \right.
11 \]
```

43.6 `\delimitershortfall`

Additionally to the forgoing `\delimiterfactor` one can modify the height of the delimiter with another value. T_EX makes the delimiter larger than the values of $\langle \text{calculated height} \rangle \cdot \langle \text{delimiterfactor} \rangle / 1000$ and $\langle \text{calculated height} \rangle - \langle \text{delimitershortfall} \rangle$. This makes it possible to always get different heights of a sequence of delimiters.

$$x \cdot ((x^2 - y^2) - 3)$$

$$x \cdot \left((x^2 - y^2) - 3 \right)$$

```

1 $x\cdot\left(\left(x^2-y^2\right)-3\right)$\ [7
2 pt]
3 $
4 \delimitershortfall-1pt
5 x\cdot\left(\left(x^2-y^2\right)-3\right)$
```

$$(((A)))$$

$$\left(\left(\left(A \right) \right) \right)$$

```

1 $\left(\left(\left(A\right)\right)\right)$\ [7pt]
2
3 $\delimitershortfall-1pt
4 \left(\left(\left(A\right)\right)\right)$
```

43.7 `\displayindent`

This is the left shift amount of a line holding displayed equation. By default it is $0pt$ but gets the value of an indented paragraph when there is an environment like the quotation one.

The following formula is typeset in the usual way without modifying anything.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$$

Now we start a quotation environment which sets `\labelwidth` to new values for a greater left margin.

- The following formula is typeset in the usual way without modifying anything.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$$

- Now we write the same equation, but now with modifying `displayindent`, it is set to the negative `\leftskip`:

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$$

```

1 \[
2   \displayindent=-\leftskip
3   f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} \mathrm{d}x
4 \]
```

43.8 `\displaywidth`

The width of the line holding a displayed equation, which is by default `\linewidth`. In the second example the formula is centered for a display width of `0.5\linewidth`.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$$

```

1 \[ f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} \mathrm{d}x \]
2 \[
3   \displaywidth=0.5\linewidth
4   f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} \mathrm{d}x
5 \]
```

43.9 `\mathsurround`

Extra space added when switching in and out of the inline math mode (see section 2.7).

43.10 `\medmuskip`

See section 11.1 for an example.

43.11 `\mkern`

Similar to `\kern`, but adds a math kern item to the current math list. Length must be a math unit.

43.12 `\mskip`

Similar to `\skip`, but adds math glue to the current math list. Length must be a math unit.

43.13 `\muskip`

Assigns a length with a math unit to one of the 256 `\muskip` register.

43.14 `\muskipdef`

Defines a symbolic name for a `\muskip` register.

43.15 `\nonscript`

Ignores immediately following glue or kern in script and scriptscript styles, which makes a redefinition of `\mathchoice` superfluous.

43.16 `\nulldelimiterspace`

This is the width of a null or missing delimiter, e.g., `\right.` or for the left one.

43.17 `\preplaysize`

Is the effective width of the line preceeding a displayed equation, whether `\abovedisplayskip` or `abovedisplayshortskip` is used for the vertical skip.

43.18 `\scriptspace`

The space inserted after an exponent or index, predefined as `\scriptspace=0.5pt`

43.19 `\thickmuskip`

See section 11.1.

43.20 `\thinmuskip`

The short version for positive skip is defined as `\def\,{\mskip\thinmuskip}` and the one for a negative skip as `\def\!{\mskip-\thinmuskip}` (see also Section 11.1).

$$\begin{array}{l} \sqrt{2}x - \sqrt{2}x \\ \sqrt{\log x} - \sqrt{\log x} \\ P(1/\sqrt{n}) - P(1/\sqrt{n}) \\ [0,1) - [0,1) \\ x^2/2 - x^2/2 \end{array}$$

```

1 $\sqrt{2} x$ -- $\sqrt{2}\,x$\\
2 $\sqrt{\log x}$ -- $\sqrt{\,\log x}$\\
3 $P\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}\right)$ -- $P\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}\right)$\\
4 $[0,1)$ -- $[\,0,1)$\\
5 $x^2/2$ -- $x^2\!/2$\\

```

$$\int \int_D dx dy \quad \int \int_D dx dy$$

$$\iint_D dx dy \quad \iint_D dx dy$$

$$\iint_D dx dy \quad \iint_D dx dy$$

$$\iint_D dx dy$$

```

1 \[\int\int_D \mathrm{d}x\mathrm{d}y \quad
2 \int\!\!\int_D \mathrm{d}x\,\,\mathrm{d}y\]
3 \[\int\!\!\int\!\!\int_D \mathrm{d}x\,\,\,\mathrm{d}y
4 \quad \int\!\!\int\!\!\int\!\!\int_D \mathrm{d}x\,\,\,\,\mathrm{d}y\]
5 \[\int\!\!\int\!\!\int\!\!\int_D \mathrm{d}x\,\,\,\,\,\mathrm{d}y\quad
6 \int\!\!\int\!\!\int\!\!\int\!\!\int_D \mathrm{d}x\,\,\,\,\,\,\mathrm{d}y\,\,\,\mathrm{d}y\]
7 \[\int\!\!\int\!\!\int\!\!\int\!\!\int_D \mathrm{d}x\,\,\,\mathrm{d}y
\]
```

43.21 `\medmuskip`

See section 11.1.

44 Math font macros

44.1 `\delcode`

Each character has not only a `\catcode` and `\mathcode` but also a `\delcode` which defines for a single character how it should look when used as a math delimiter.

44.2 `\delimiter`

Every character can be declared as a delimiter, but $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ must know which characters should be used for the default and the big size. For $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ the macro `\DeclareMathDelimiter` should be used (see section 8.2 on page 30).

In the following example `\tdela` is the character 0x22 (\uparrow) from font number 2 (`csm`) and character 0x78 from font number 3 (`cmex`) for the big version. `\tdelb` is the same vice versa (\downarrow).

$$\uparrow x - y \downarrow (x + y) = x^2 - y^2$$

$$\uparrow \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^n} \downarrow^2 = 4$$

$$\left| \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^n} \right|^2 = 4$$

```

1 \def\tdela{\delimiter"4222378\relax}
2 \def\tdelb{\delimiter"5223379\relax}
3
4 $\tdela x-y\tdelb(x+y)=x^2-y^2$
5
6 \[\tdela\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} {1\over 2^n}\tdelb
7 \quad^2 = 4\]
8
9 \[\left\{\tdela\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} {1\over 2^n}\right\
10 \tdelb^2 = 4\]
```

44.3 `\displaystyle`

See section 12 for an example.

When T_EX switches into the math mode, it typesets everything using one of the 16 possible families of fonts. `\fam` is an internal register where other macros can check which font is the actual one. At the beginning T_EX starts with `\fam=-1`.

123abcABCfffi \downarrow l(0)
123abcABCfffi \downarrow l(13)
123abcABCfffi \downarrow l(14)
 123abcABC $\uparrow\downarrow$ (15)
 123abcABC $\alpha\beta\gamma$ (-1)
123abcABC $\alpha\beta\gamma$ (1)

- 1 `\mathrm{123abcABC\alpha\beta\gamma (\the\fam)}`
`}\$\\[5pt]`
- 2 `\mathbf{123abcABC\alpha\beta\gamma (\the\fam)}`
`}\$\\[5pt]`
- 3 `\mathit{123abcABC\alpha\beta\gamma (\the\fam)}`
`}\$\\[5pt]`
- 4 `\mathtt{123abcABC\alpha\beta\gamma (\the\fam)}`
`}\$\\[5pt]`
- 5 `\mathsf{123abcABC\alpha\beta\gamma (\the\fam)}`
`}\$\\[5pt]`
- 6 `\mathnormal{123abcABC\alpha\beta\gamma (\the\fam)}`
`}\$`

Requires three parameter as one number, the class, the font family and the character.

```
1 \def\dA{\mathaccent"7015\relax}
2 {\Large $\dA{A}$}
```

Declares a following character as a binary symbol with another spacing before and behind such a symbol.

```
1 {\Large
2 $a|b \quad a\mathbin| b$}
```

Declares a math character by three integer numbers as Parameters, giving its class, font family, and font position. In the following example `\mathchar`

defines a character of class 1 (big operators), font family 3 (math extension font) and number 58 (big sum character).

$$a \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} b \quad a \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} b$$

```
1 {\Large
2 $a\sum\limits_{i=1}^{\infty} b \quad
3 a\mathchar"1358\limits_{i=1}^{\infty} b$}
```

44.8 `\mathchardef`

This is in principle the same as `\mathchar`, it only allows to make such definitions permanent.

$$a \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \sqrt{i+1} \quad a \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \sqrt{i+1}$$

```
1 \bgroup
2 \mathchardef\sum="1358
3 $a\sum\limits_{i=1}^{\infty}\sqrt{i+1}$\ [5pt]
4 \egroup
5
6 $a\sum\limits_{i=1}^{\infty}\sqrt{i+1}$
```

44.9 `\mathchoice`

Specifies specific subformula sizes for the 4 main styles: `\displaystyle` – `\textstyle` – `\scriptstyle` – `\scriptscriptstyle`.

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left| \frac{\sqrt{i+1}}{i^2} \right|$$

```
1 \Large
2 \def\myRule{{%
3   \color{red}%
4   \mathchoice{\rule{2pt}{20pt}}{\rule{1pt}{10pt}}%
5     {\rule{0.5pt}{5pt}}{\rule{0.25pt}{2.5pt}}}%
6   \mkern2mu}
7 $ \myRule\sum\limits_{\myRule i=1}^{\myRule\infty}%
8 \myRule\frac{\myRule\sqrt{\myRule i+1}}{\myRule i^2}$
```

44.10 `\mathclose`

Assigns class 5 (closing character) to the following parameter, which can hold a single character or a subformula.

$$A : \frac{B}{C} : D \quad A : \frac{B}{C} : D$$

```
1 {\large
2 $A:\frac{B}{C}:D$\ [5pt]
3 $A\mathopen:\frac{B}{C}\mathclose: D $}
```

44.11 `\mathcode`

A math font is far different from a text font. A lot of the characters has to be defined with `\mathcode`, which defines the character with its class, font family and character number, e.g., `\mathcode'\<="313C`. It defines the character “<” as a relation symbol (class 3) from the font family 1 and the character number 0x3C, which is 60 decimal.

44.12 `\mathop`

Assigns class 1 (large operator) to the parameter, which can be a single character or a subformula.

$$A_{i=1}^{\infty}$$

$$\mathop{A}_{i=1}^{\infty}$$

```
1 \[ A_{i=1}^{\infty} \]
2 \[ \mathop{A}_{i=1}^{\infty} \]
```

44.13 `\mathopen`

Vice versa to `\mathclose` (see section 44.10).

44.14 `\mathord`

Assigns class 0 (ordinary character) to the following parameter, which can be a single character or a subformula.

$$y = f(x)$$

$$y \mathord{=} f(x)$$

```
1 {\large
2 $y = f(x)$\}[5pt]
3 $y \mathord{=} f(x)$}
```

44.15 `\mathpunct`

Assigns class 6 (punctuation) to the following parameter, which can be a single character or a subformula (see section 11.4 for an example).

44.16 `\mathrel`

Assigns class 3 (relation) to the following parameter, which can be a single character or a subformula.

$$x_1 \mathrel{O} x_2 \mathrel{O} x_3$$

$$x_1 \mathrel{O} x_2 \mathrel{O} x_3$$

```
1 {\large
2 $x_1 \mathrel{O} x_2 \mathrel{O} x_3$\}[5pt]
3 $x_1 \mathrel{O} x_2 \mathrel{O} x_3$}
```

44.17 `\scriptfont`

Specifies the scriptstyle font (used for super/subscript) for a family.

$$A_1 \ A_1$$

```
1 $A_1$
2 \font\tenxii=cmr12
3 \scriptfont0=\tenxii
4 $A_1$
```

44.18 `\scriptscriptfont`

Specifies the scriptscriptstyle font for a family.

44.19 `\scriptscriptstyle`

Selects scriptscript style for the following characters.

44.20 `\scriptstyle`

Selects script style for the following characters.

44.21 `\skew`

Especially for italic characters double accents are often misplaced. `\skew` has three arguments

horizontal shift: A value in math units for the additional shift of the accent.

the accent: The symbol which is placed above the character.

the character: This is in general a single character, but can also include itself an accent.

\mathcal{M} amath redefines the setting of double accents. This is the reason why there are only a few cases where someone has to use `\skew` when the package `amsmath` is loaded, like in this document.

\tilde{i}	\tilde{A}	<code>1 \large</code>
		<code>2 \$\tilde{i}\$ \quad \$\tilde{A}\$\ [5pt]</code>
\tilde{i}	\tilde{A}	<code>3 \$\skew{3}{\tilde{i}}\$ \quad \$\skew{7}{\tilde{A}}\$</code>

44.22 `\skewchar`

Is -1 or the character (reference symbol) used to fine-tune the positioning of math accents.

44.23 `\textfont`

Specifies the text font for a family.

44.24 `\textstyle`

Selects the text style for the following characters.

45 Math macros**45.1** `\above`

$\frac{a}{b}$	1 <code>\$a\above0pt b\$\[8pt]</code>
$\frac{a}{b}$	2
$\frac{a}{b}$	3 <code> \${a\above1pt b}\$\[8pt]</code>
$\frac{a}{b}$	4
$\frac{a}{b}$	5 <code> \${a\above2.5pt b}\$\[8pt]</code>
$\frac{a}{b}$	6
$\frac{a}{b}$	7 <code> \$\displaystyle{a\above0pt b}\$</code>

45.2 `\abovewithdelims`

$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)$	1 <code>\$a\abovewithdelims()0pt b\$\[8pt]</code>
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	2
$\left[\frac{a}{b}\right]$	3 <code> \def\fdelimA{\abovewithdelims\{ }1.0pt}</code>
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	4 <code> \${a\fdelimA b}\$\[8pt]</code>
$\left[\frac{a}{b}\right]$	5
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	6 <code> \def\fdelimB{\abovewithdelims[]2.0pt}</code>
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	7 <code> \${a\fdelimB b}\$\[8pt]</code>
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	8
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	9 <code> \def\fdelimC{\abovewithdelims\{. }0pt}</code>
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	10 <code> \$\displaystyle{a\fdelimC b}\$</code>

45.3 `\atop`

$\frac{a}{b}$	1 <code>\$a\atop b\$\[8pt]</code>
$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$	2
$\frac{a}{b}$	3 <code> \${n \atop k} = {n!\above1pt k!(n-k)!}\$\[8pt]</code>
$\frac{a}{b}$	4
$\frac{a}{b}$	5 <code> \$\displaystyle{a\atop b}\$</code>

45.4 `\atopwithdelims`

$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)$	1 <code>\$a\atopwithdelims() b\$\[8pt]</code>
$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$	2
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	3 <code> \${n \atopwithdelims() k} = {n!\above1pt k!(n-k)!}\$\[8pt]</code>
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	4
$\left\{\frac{a}{b}\right\}$	5 <code> \$\displaystyle{a\atopwithdelims\{. } b}\$</code>

45.5 `\displaylimits`

Resets the conventions for using limits with operators to the standard for the used environment.

45.6 `\eqno`

Puts an equation number at the right margin, the parameter can hold anything. `\eqno` places only the parameter, but doesn't increase any equation counter.

$$y = f(x) \quad (A12)$$

```
\[ y=f(x) \eqno{(A12)} \]
```

45.7 `\everydisplay`

Inserts the parameter at the start of every switch to display math mode.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$$

$$g(x) = \int \frac{\sin^2 x}{x^2} dx$$

```
1 \everydisplay{\color{red}
2 }
3 \[ f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx, \mathrm{d}x \]
4 \[ g(x) = \int \frac{\sin^2 x}{x^2} dx, \mathrm{d}x \]
```

45.8 `\everymath`

Same as `\everydisplay`, but now for the inline mode. In the following example the `\displaystyle` is used (besides using color red) for every inline math expression.

$$f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx$$

Instead of $\frac{\sin x}{x}$ now with $\frac{\cos x}{x}$:

$$g(x) = \int \frac{\cos x}{x} dx$$

```
1 \everymath{\color{red}%
2 \displaystyle}
3 \[ f(x) = \int \frac{\sin x}{x} dx, \mathrm{d}x \]
4 Instead of $\frac{\sin x}{x}$
5 now with $\frac{\cos x}{x}$:
6 \[ g(x) = \int \frac{\cos x}{x} dx, \mathrm{d}x \]
```

Pay attention for side effects on footnotes and other macros which use the math mode for superscript and other math related modes. In this case you'll get the footnotes also in red.

45.9 `\left`

\TeX calculates the size of the following delimiter needed at the left side of a formula. Requires an additional `right`.

45.10 `\leqno`

Vice versa to `\eqno` (see section 45.6).

Typesets limits above and/or below operators (see section 6 on page 25).

Defines the following parameter as subformula.

The opposite of `\limits`, instead of above/below limits are placed to the right of large operators (class 1).

Is equivalent to the fraction macro of L^AT_EX and equivalent to the `\overwithdelims`, see section 45.16.

$$\frac{a}{b} \quad \frac{m}{n} \overline{\frac{}{a+b}} \\ \left[\frac{m}{n} \overline{\frac{}{a+b}} \right]$$

Puts a line over the following character or subformula and has the same problems with different heights as underlines (see section 45.19).

```

1 $\overline{x}+\overline{y}=\overline{z}$\
2 \let\ol\overline
3 $\ol{x} + \ol{A} = \ol{z}$ $\ll[5pt]
4 \def\yPh{\vphantom{A}}
5 $\ol{x}\yPh + \ol{A} = \ol{z}\yPh$ $

```

Is a generalized fraction command with preset fraction bar thickness.

$$\frac{a}{b} \quad \frac{m}{n} \quad \frac{a+b}{} \quad \frac{m}{n} \quad \frac{a+b}{}$$

Makes a radical atom from the delimiter (27-bit number) and the math field.

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{7}}$$

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{7}}$$

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{7}}$$

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{7}}$$

```

1 \def\mySqrt{\radical"0270371\relax}
2 $ \mySqrt{\frac{1}{7}} $\\[5pt]
3
4 \def\mySqrt{\radical"0270372\relax}
5 $ \mySqrt{\frac{1}{7}} $\\[5pt]
6
7 \def\mySqrt{\radical"0270373\relax}
8 $ \mySqrt{\frac{1}{7}} $\\[5pt]
9
10 \def\mySqrt{\radical"0270374\relax}
11 $ \mySqrt{\frac{1}{7}} $\\[5pt]

```

45.18 `\right`

Opposite to `\left`, makes TeX calculate the size of the delimiter needed at the right of a formula.

45.19 `\underline`

When there is a combination of variables with and without an index, the underlines are typeset with a different depth. Using `\vphantom` in this case is a good choice.

$$\underline{x} + \underline{y} = \underline{z}$$

$$\underline{x} + \underline{y} = \underline{z}$$

$$\underline{x_1} + \underline{y_2} = \underline{z_3}$$

```

1 $\underline{x}+\underline{y}=\underline{z}$\\
2
3 \let\ul\underline
4 \def\yPh{\vphantom{y}}
5 $ \ul{x\yPh} + \ul{y} = \ul{z\yPh} $\\
6
7 $ \ul{x_1} + \ul{y_2} = \ul{z_3} $

```

45.20 `\vcenter`

Centers vertical material with respect to the axis.

46 Math penalties

46.1 `\binoppenalty`

A penalty for breaking math expressions between lines in a paragraph. TeX breaks lines only when the binary symbol is not the last one and when the penalty is below 10,000.

46.2 `\displaywidowpenalty`

The penalty which is added after the penultimate line immediately preceding a display math formula.

46.3 `\postdisplaypenalty`

Is added immediately after a math display ends.

46.4 `\predisplaypenalty`

Is added immediately before a math display starts.

46.5 `\relpenalty`

The penalty for a line break after a relation symbol (if a break is possible).

Part IV

Other packages

The following sections are not a replacement for the package documentation!

47 List of available math packages

accents	alphalph	amsart	amsbook
amsbsy	amscd	amscls	amsfonts
amslatex	amsltx11	amsmath	amsppt
amsppt1	amsproc	amssym (plain TeX)	amssymb (LaTeX)
amstex (Plain TeX)	amstext	amsthm	bez123
bitfield	brclc	breqn	cancel
cases	comma	datenummer	diagxy
doublestroke	easyeqn	easybmat	easymat
eqnarray	esvect	fixmath	ftlpoint
icomma	leftidx	mathdots	mathtools
mathematica	mil3	mtbe	Nath
numprint	random	romannum	TeXaide

The following examples depend on the listed versions of the packages:

<code>amsopn.sty</code>	1999/12/14 v2.01 operator names
<code>bm.sty</code>	1999/07/05 v1.0g Bold Symbol Support (DPC/FMi)
<code>empheq.sty</code>	2004/08/03 v2.11 Emphasizing equations (MH)
<code>amscd.sty</code>	1999/11/29 v2.0
<code>accents.sty</code>	2000/08/06 v1.2 Math Accent Tools
<code>framed.sty</code>	2002/12/29 v 0.5: framed or shaded text with page breaks
<code>pstcol.sty</code>	2001/06/20 v1.1 PSTricks color colompatibility (DPC)
<code>pstricks.sty</code>	2004/05/06 v0.2k LaTeX wrapper for ‘PSTricks’ (RN,HV)
<code>pstricks.tex</code>	2003/03/07 v97 patch 15 ‘PSTricks’ (tvz)
<code>pst-node.sty</code>	1997/03/25 package wrapper for PSTricks pst-node.tex
<code>delarray.sty</code>	1994/03/14 v1.01 array delimiter package (DPC)
<code>xypic.sty</code>	1999/02/16 Xy-pic version 3.7
<code>exscale.eps</code>	Graphic file (type veps)

47.1 accents

If you want to write for example an underlined M, then you can do it by

<code>\underline{\$M\$}</code>	\underline{M}
<code>\underbar{\$M\$}</code>	\underbar{M}
<code>\underaccent{\bar}{M}</code>	$\underaccent{\bar}{M}$

As seen, there is no difference between `\underline` and `\underbar`. For some reasons it may be better to use the `accent` package with the `\underaccents` macro.

47.2 *amscd* – commutative diagrams

The `amscd` package is part of the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math bundle or available at CTAN²⁷ and has no options for the `\usepackage` command. `amscd` does not support diagonal arrows but is much easier to handle than the complex `pstricks` package or the `xypic` package. On the other hand simple diagrams can be written with the `array` environment or look at [23].

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R \times S \times T & \xrightarrow{\text{restriction}} & S \times T \\ \text{proj} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{proj} \\ R \times S & \xleftarrow{\text{inclusion}} & S \end{array}$$

```

1 \[
2 \begin{CD}
3   R\times S\times T @>\text{restriction}>> S\times T \\
4   @V\text{proj}VV @VV\text{proj}V \\
5   R\times S @<\text{inclusion}<< S \\
6 \end{CD}
7 \]
```

47.3 *amsopn*

With the `amsopn` package it is very easy to declare new math operators, which are written in upright mode:

$$\underset{s=p}{Res} \quad \text{versus} \quad \underset{s=p}{Res}$$

```

1 \documentclass[10pt]{article}
2 \usepackage{amsmath}
3 \usepackage{amsopn}
4 \DeclareMathOperator{\Res}{Res}
5 \begin{document}
6 $\underset{s=p}{\Res}\quad\underset{s=p}{\Res}$
7 \end{document}
```

Table 20 shows the predefined operatornames of `amsopn`.

47.4 *bigdel*

This is a very useful package together with the `multirow` package. In the following example we need additional parentheses for a different number of

²⁷CTAN://macros/latex/required/amslatex/math/amscd.dtx

<code>\arccos</code>	arccos	<code>\arcsin</code>	arcsin	<code>\arctan</code>	arctan
<code>\arg</code>	arg	<code>\cos</code>	cos	<code>\cosh</code>	cosh
<code>\cot</code>	cot	<code>\coth</code>	coth	<code>\csc</code>	csc
<code>\deg</code>	deg	<code>\det</code>	det	<code>\dim</code>	dim
<code>\exp</code>	exp	<code>\gcd</code>	gcd	<code>\hom</code>	hom
<code>\inf</code>	inf	<code>\injl</code>	injl	<code>\ker</code>	ker
<code>\lg</code>	lg	<code>\lim</code>	lim	<code>\liminf</code>	lim inf
<code>\limsup</code>	lim sup	<code>\ln</code>	ln	<code>\log</code>	log
<code>\max</code>	max	<code>\min</code>	min	<code>\Pr</code>	Pr
<code>\projlim</code>	projlim	<code>\sec</code>	sec	<code>\sin</code>	sin
<code>\sinh</code>	sinh	<code>\sup</code>	sup	<code>\tan</code>	tan
<code>\tanh</code>	tanh				

Table 20: The predefined operators of `amsopn.sty`

rows. This is also possible with the `array` environment, but not as easy as with the `bigdelim` package. The trick is that you need one separate column for a big delimiter, but with empty cells in all rows, which the delimiter spans.

$$\left(\begin{array}{cccc} x_{11} & x_{12} & \dots & x_{1p} \\ x_{21} & x_{22} & \dots & x_{2p} \\ \vdots & & & \\ x_{n_1 1} & x_{n_1 2} & \dots & x_{n_1 p} \\ x_{n_1+1,1} & x_{n_1+1,2} & \dots & x_{n_1+1,p} \\ \vdots & & & \\ x_{n_1+n_2,1} & x_{n_1+n_2,2} & \dots & x_{n_1+n_2,p} \\ \vdots & & & \end{array} \right) \begin{array}{l} \left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} x_{11} \\ x_{21} \\ \vdots \\ x_{n_1 1} \end{matrix}} \right\} \text{some text} \\ \left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} x_{n_1+1,1} \\ \vdots \\ x_{n_1+n_2,1} \end{matrix}} \right\} \text{some more text} \end{array}$$

```

1 \[
2   \begin{pmatrix}
3     & x_{11} & x_{12} & \dots & x_{1p} & \rdelim\}{4}{3cm}[some text]\\
4     & x_{21} & x_{22} & \dots & x_{2p} & \\
5     & \vdots & & & & \\
6     & x_{n_1 1} & x_{n_1 2} & \dots & x_{n_1 p} & \\
7     & x_{n_1+1,1} & x_{n_1+1,2} & \dots & x_{n_1+1,p} & \\
8     & \vdots & & & & \\
9     & x_{n_1+n_2,1} & x_{n_1+n_2,2} & \dots & x_{n_1+n_2,p} & \\
10    & \vdots & & & & \\
11    & \vdots & & & & \\
12  \end{pmatrix}
13 \]
```

As seen in the above listing the left big delimiter is placed in the first column, all other rows start with second column. It is possible to use all

columns above and below the delimiter. For the `array` environment there must be two more columns defined, in case of a big delimiter left and right. The syntax of `\ldelim` and `\rdelim` is:

```
\ldelim<delimiter>{<n rows>}{<added horizontal space>}[<text>]
\rdelim<delimiter>{<n rows>}{<added horizontal space>}[<text>]
```

Any delimiter which is possible for the `\left` or `\right` command is allowed, e.g., “`() [] {} |`”. The text is an optional argument and always typeset in text mode.

47.5 *bm*

By default the math macro `\mathbf` writes everything in bold and in upright mode $y = f(x)$ (`\mathbf{y=f(x)}`), but it should be in italic mode especially for variables $y = f(x)$ (`\bm{y=f(x)}`), which is possible with the package *bm*. For writing a whole formula in bold have a look at section 22 on page 48.

47.6 *braket*

It is available at CTAN://macros/latex/contrib/other/misc/braket.sty and provides several styles for writing math expressions inside brackets. For example:

$$\left\{ x \in \mathbf{R} \mid 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \right\}$$

```
1 \[ \left\{ x \in \mathbf{R} \mid 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \right\} \]
```

looks not quite right and it is not really easy to get the first vertical line in the same size as the outer braces. Some solution may be using `\vphantom`:

$$\left\{ x \in \mathbf{R} \left| 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \right. \right\}$$

```
1 \[
2 \left\{ \vphantom{\frac{5}{3}} x \in \mathbf{R} \right| 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \left. \right\}
3 \]
```

The package *braket* has the macros

```
1 \Bra{<math expression>}
2 \Ket{<math expression>}
3 \Braket{<math expression>}
4 \Set{<math expression>}
```

and the same with a leading lower letter, which are not really interesting.

$$\left\langle x \in \mathbf{R} \middle| 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \right\rangle$$

$$\left| x \in \mathbf{R} \middle| 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \right\rangle$$

$$\left\langle x \in \mathbf{R} \middle| 0 < \left| x \right| < \frac{5}{3} \right\rangle$$

$$\left\langle x \in \mathbf{R} \middle| 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \right\rangle$$

$$\left\{ x \in \mathbf{R} \middle| 0 < |x| < \frac{5}{3} \right\}$$

```

1 \[ \Bra{x\in\mathbf{R} | 0<|x|<\frac{5}{3}} \]
2 \[ \Ket{x\in\mathbf{R} | 0<|x|<\frac{5}{3}} \]
3 \[ \Braket{x\in\mathbf{R} | 0<|x|<\frac{5}{3}} \]
4 \[ \Braket{x\in\mathbf{R} | 0<\vert x\vert <\frac{5}{3}} \]
5 \[ \Set{x\in\mathbf{R} | 0<|x|<\frac{5}{3}} \]
```

The difference between the `\Set` and the `\Braket` macro is the handling of the vertical lines. In `\Set` only the first one gets the same size as the braces and in `\Braket` all.

$$\left\langle \phi \middle| \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} \middle| \psi \right\rangle$$

$$\left\{ \phi \middle| \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} \middle| \psi \right\}$$

```

1 \[ \Braket{\phi | \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} | \psi} \]
2 \[ \Set{\phi | \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} | \psi} \]
```

`\Bra` and `\Ket` do nothing with the inner vertical lines.

47.7 `cancel`

This is a nice package for canceling anything in mathmode with a slash, backslash or a X. To get a horizontal line we can define an additional macro called `\hcancel` with an optional argument for the line color (requires package `color`):

```

1 \newcommand\hcancel[2][black]{\setbox0=\hbox{#2}%
2   \rlap{\raisebox{.45\ht0}{\textcolor{#1}{\rule{\wd0}{1pt}}}}#2}
```

It is no problem to redefine the `\cancel` macros to get also colored lines. A horizontal line for single characters is also described in section 14 on page 40.

$$\backslash\text{cancel}: f(x) = \frac{(x^2 + 1) \cancel{(x-1)}}{\cancel{(x-1)}(x+1)}$$

`\bcancel`: $\mathfrak{Z} \quad \overline{1234567}$

`\xcancel`: $\mathfrak{Z} \quad \overline{1234567}$

`\hcancel`: $\mathfrak{Z} \quad \overline{1234567}$

```
1 $f(x)=\dfrac{\left(x^2+1\right)\cancel{(x-1)}}{\cancel{(x-1)}(x+1)}\$\[0.5cm]
2 $\bcancel{3}\quad\bcancel{1234567}\$\[0.5cm]
3 $\xcancel{3}\quad\cancel{1234567}\$\[0.5cm]
4 $\hcancel{3}\quad\cancel[red]{1234567}\$
```

47.8 cool

The `cool` package defines a lot of special mathematical expressions to use them by the macro name. The following list shows only some of them, for more informations look at the example file, which comes with the package.

`\Sin{x}` $\sin(x)$

`\Cos{x}` $\cos(x)$

`\Tan{x}` $\tan(x)$

`\Csc{x}` $\csc(x)$

`\Sec{x}` $\sec(x)$

`\Cot{x}` $\cot(x)$

`\Style{ArcTrig=inverse}` (default)

`\ArcSin{x}` $\sin^{-1}(x)$

`\ArcCos{x}` $\cos^{-1}(x)$

`\ArcTan{x}` $\tan^{-1}(x)$

`\Style{ArcTrig=arc}`

`\ArcSin{x}` $\arcsin(x)$

`\ArcCos{x}` $\arccos(x)$

`\ArcTan{x}` $\arctan(x)$

`\ArcCsc{x}` $\csc^{-1}(x)$

`\ArcSec{x}` $\sec^{-1}(x)$

`\ArcCot{x}` $\cot^{-1}(x)$

<code>\Factorial{n}</code>	$n!$
<code>\DblFactorial{n}</code>	$n!!$
<code>\Binomial{n}{k}</code>	$\binom{n}{k}$
<code>\Multinomial{1,2,3,4}</code>	$(10; 1, 2, 3, 4)$
<code>\GammaFunc{x}</code>	$\Gamma(x)$
<code>\IncGamma{a}{x}</code>	$\Gamma(a, x)$
<code>\GenIncGamma{a}{x}{y}</code>	$\Gamma(a, x, y)$
<code>\RegIncGamma{a}{x}</code>	$Q(a, x)$
<code>\RegIncGammaInv{a}{x}</code>	$Q^{-1}(a, x)$
<code>\GenRegIncGamma{a}{x}{y}</code>	$Q(a, x, y)$
<code>\GenRegIncGammaInv{a}{x}{y}</code>	$Q^{-1}(a, x, y)$
<code>\Pochhammer{a}{n}</code>	$(a)_n$
<code>\LogGamma{x}</code>	$\log \Gamma(x)$
<code>\Hypergeometric{0}{0}{-}{-}{x}</code>	${}_0F_0(;;x)$
<code>\Hypergeometric{0}{1}{-}{b}{x}</code>	${}_0F_1(;b;x)$
<code>\RegHypergeometric{0}{0}{-}{-}{x}</code>	${}_0\tilde{F}_0(;;x)$
<code>\RegHypergeometric{0}{1}{-}{b}{x}</code>	${}_0\tilde{F}_1(;b;x)$
<code>\MeijerG[a,b]{n}{p}{m}{q}{x}</code>	$G_{p,q}^{m,n} \left(x \left \begin{matrix} a_1, \dots, a_n, a_{n+1}, \dots, a_p \\ b_1, \dots, b_m, b_{m+1}, \dots, b_q \end{matrix} \right. \right)$
<code>\MeijerG{1,2,3,4}{5,6}{3,6,9}{12,15,18,21,24}{x}</code>	$G_{6,8}^{3,4} \left(x \left \begin{matrix} 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 \\ 3, 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 24 \end{matrix} \right. \right)$
<code>\RiemannZeta{s}</code>	$\zeta(s)$
<code>\Zeta{s}</code>	$\zeta(s)$
<code>\HurwitzZeta{s}{a}</code>	$\zeta(s, a)$
<code>\Zeta{s,a}</code>	$\zeta(s, a)$
<code>\RiemannSiegelTheta{x}</code>	$\vartheta(x)$
<code>\RiemannSiegelZ{x}</code>	$Z(x)$
<code>\StieltjesGamma{n}</code>	γ_n
<code>\MathieuC{a}{q}{z}</code>	$Ce(a, q, z)$
<code>\MathieuS{a}{q}{z}</code>	$Se(a, q, z)$
<code>\MathieuCharacteristicA{r}{q}</code>	$a_r(q)$
<code>\MathieuCharisticA{r}{q}</code>	$a_r(q)$
<code>\MathieuCharacteristicB{r}{q}</code>	$b_r(q)$
<code>\MathieuCharisticB{r}{q}</code>	$b_r(q)$
<code>\MathieuCharacteristicExponent{a}{q}</code>	$r(a, q)$
<code>\MathieuCharisticExp{a}{q}</code>	$r(a, q)$

47.9 delarray

Package `delarray`²⁸ supports different delimiters which are defined together with the beginning of an array:

```
1 \begin{array}<delLeft>{cc}<delRight>
2 ...
```

defines an array with two centered columns and the delimiters “<delLeft><delRight>”, e.g., “()”.

```
1 \[
2 A=\begin{array}({cc})
3     a & b \\
4     c & d \\
5 \end{array}
6 \]
```

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$$

The `delarray` package expects a pair of delimiters. If you need only one (like the cases structure) then use the dot for an “empty” delimiter, e.g.,

```
1 \[
2 A=\begin{array}\{{cc}\}.
3     a & b \\
4     c & d \\
5 \end{array}
6 \]
```

$$A = \begin{cases} a & b \\ c & d \end{cases}$$

which is a useful command for a cases structure without the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package, which is described in the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math part.

47.10 dotseqn

This package²⁹ fills the space between the math expression and the equation number with dots. Expect problems when using this package together with $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math.

$$F(x) = \int f(x) dx + C \quad \quad (47.1)$$

$$F(x) = \int f(x) dx + C \quad \quad (47.2)$$

²⁸CTAN://macros/latex/required/tools/delarray.dtx

²⁹CTAN://macros/latex/contrib/dotseqn

```

1 \begin{eqnarray}
2   F(x) &=& \int f(x)\,,\mathrm{d}x + C
3 \end{eqnarray}
4 %
5 \begin{equation}
6   F(x)=\int f(x)\,,\mathrm{d}x + C
7 \end{equation}

```

47.11 empheq

This package supports different frames for math environments of the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math package. It doesn't support all the environments from standard L^AT_EX which are not modified by $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math, e.g., `eqnarray` environment.

With the optional argument of the `empheq` environment the preferred box type can be specified. A simple one is `\fbox`

$$f(x) = \int_1^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^2} dt = 1 \quad (47.3)$$

```

1 \begin{empheq}[box=\fbox]{align}
2   f(x)=\int_1^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\,,dt=1
3 \end{empheq}

```

The same is possible with the macro `\colorbox`:

$$f(x) = \int_1^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^2} dt = 1 \quad (47.4)$$

```

1 \begin{empheq}[box={\fboxsep=10pt\colorbox{yellow}}]{align}
2   f(x)=\int_1^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\,,dt=1
3 \end{empheq}

```

The key `box` can hold any possible L^AT_EX command sequence. Boxing subequations is also no problem, the `empheq` environment works in the same way:

$$f(x) = \int_1^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^1} dt = 1 \quad (47.5a)$$

$$f(x) = \int_2^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^2} dt = 0.25 \quad (47.5b)$$

```

1 \begin{subequations}
2 \begin{empheq}[box={\fboxsep=10pt\colorbox{cyan}}]{align}
3   f(x) &= \int_1^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\,,dt=1\backslash

```

```

4   f(x) & =\int_2^{\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}\,,dt=0.25
5   \end{empheq}
6   \end{subequations}

```

For more information on `empheq` package have a look at the documentation of the package which is available at any CTAN server.

47.12 *esint*

This is a very useful package when you want nice double or triple integral or curve integral symbols. The ones from the `wasysym` package³⁰ are not the best. `esint`³¹ supports the following symbols:

$$\backslash\mathrm{int} : \int \quad (47.6)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{iint} : \iint \quad (47.7)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{iiintop} : \iiint \quad (47.8)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{iiiintop} : \iiiii \quad (47.9)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{dotsintop} : \int \cdots \int \quad (47.10)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{oointop} : \oint \quad (47.11)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{oiint} : \oiint \quad (47.12)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{sqint} : \int \square \quad (47.13)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{sqiint} : \iint \square \quad (47.14)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{oointctr} \mathrm{clockwise} : \oint \quad (47.15)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{ooint} \mathrm{clockwise} : \oint \quad (47.16)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{varoint} \mathrm{clockwise} : \oint \quad (47.17)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{varointctr} \mathrm{clockwise} : \oint \quad (47.18)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{fint} : \int \quad (47.19)$$

³⁰CTAN://macros/latex/contrib/wasysym/

³¹CTAN://macros/latex/contrib/esint/ CTAN://fonts/ps-type1/esint/

$$\backslash\mathrm{varoiint} : \oint \quad (47.20)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{landupint} : \int^{\uparrow} \quad (47.21)$$

$$\backslash\mathrm{landdownint} : \int^{\downarrow} \quad (47.22)$$

47.13 *eucal* and *euscript*

These packages should be part of your local T_EX installation, because they come with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math packages. Otherwise get them from CTAN³². They support a scriptwriting of only uppercase letters:

`\mathscr{...}` *A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z*

Read the documentation for the interdependence to the `\mathcal` command. For the above example the package *eucal* was loaded with the option `mathscr`.

47.14 *exscale*

The following formula is written with the default fontsize where everything looks more or less well:

$$\int_{-1}^{+1} \frac{f(x)}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx \approx \frac{\pi}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n f\left(\cos\left(\frac{2i-1}{2n}\right)\right)$$

Writing the same with the fontsize `\huge` gives a surprising result, which belongs to the historical development of L^AT_EX, the `\int` and `\sum` symbols are not stretched. This extreme fontsize is often needed for slides and not only written “just for fun”.

$$\int_{-1}^{+1} \frac{f(x)}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx \approx \frac{\pi}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n f\left(\cos\left(\frac{2i-1}{2n}\right)\right)$$

Using the *exscale* package³³ package, which should be part of any local T_EX installation, all symbols get the right size.

³²CTAN://fonts/amsfonts/latex/euscript.sty

³³CTAN://macros/latex/base/

$$\int_{-1}^{+1} \frac{f(x)}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx \approx \frac{\pi}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n f\left(\cos\left(\frac{2i-1}{2n}\right)\right)$$

47.15 *mathtools*

This package comes with a lot of additional features for typesetting math code. Sometimes it is useful when only such equations are numbered which are referenced in the text. This is possible with the switch `\showonlyrefs`.

Matrices are set by default with a centered horizontal alignment, which is often not the best way. The *mathtools* package provides a starred version of the matrix environments which allow an optional argument for the horizontal alignment:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ -11 & 11 & -11 \end{pmatrix}$$

```

1 \[
2 \begin{pmatrix*}[r]
3   1 & -1 & 0 \\
4  -1 & 1 & -1 \\
5   1 & -1 & 0 \\
6 -11 & 11 & -11 \\
7 \end{pmatrix*}
8 \]
```

mathtools also provides some more environments for setting equations. Very interesting is the `lgathered` environment, which allows to typeset a formula in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= a + b + c \\ &\quad d + e + f + g + h \\ &\quad\quad i + j + k \end{aligned} \tag{47.23}$$

```

1 \begin{align}
2 x &=
3 \begin{lgathered}[t]
4   a + b + c \\
5   d + e +
6   \!\begin{gathered}[t]
7     f + g + h \\
8     i + j + k
9   \end{gathered}
10 \end{lgathered}
11 \end{align}
```

The `\!` revokes the internal horizontal space in front of the `gathered` environment.

47.16 `nicefrac`

Typesetting fractions in the inline mode is often a bad choice, the vertical spacing increases in fact of the fraction. The `nicefrac` package defines the macro `\nicefrac`, which is used in the same way as the `\frac` command, but it typesets the fraction with a less height: $\frac{2}{3}$ `\nicefrac{2}{3}`. The package is part of the `units` package bundle and can be found in the directory of `units`.

47.17 `relsize`

Often consecutives math operators are used, like two sum symbols, e.g.,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{i=1}^n i^2$$

As seen the sums are of the same size. To increase the first operator size, someone can use the `\scalebox` macro from package `graphicx` environment and write an own macro `\Sum`, e.g.,

```
1 \def\Sum{\ensuremath\mathop{\scalebox{1.2}{\displaystyle\sum}}\nolimits}
2 \[ \Sum_{j=1}\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} i \]
```

$$\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} i$$

Another solution is to use the `relsize` package³⁴ together with the `exscale` one. `relsize` defines a useful macro `\mathlarger`:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{i=1}^n i^2$$

```
\[ \mathlarger{\sum}\sum_{i=1}^n i^2 \]
```

47.18 `xypic`

The `\xymatrix` macro is part of the `xypic` package³⁵ which can be loaded with several options which are not so important here.³⁶

³⁴CTAN://macros/latex/ltxmisc/

³⁵CTAN://macros/generic/diagrams/xypic/xy-3.7/

³⁶For more information look at the package documentation or the package `xy` itself, which is often saved in `/usr/share/texmf/tex/generic`

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & & B & & C \\
 \downarrow & \searrow & & & \\
 D & \cdots & E & \rightsquigarrow & F \\
 & & \nearrow & & \\
 G & & H & & I
 \end{array} \tag{47.24}$$

This matrix was created with

```

1 \[
2 \xymatrix{ A\POS [];[d]**\dir {\sim},[];[dr]**\dir {-} & B & C\\
3 D & E\POS [];[l]**\dir {.},[];[r]**\dir {\sim} & F\POS [];[dl
   ]**\dir {\sim}\\
4 G & H & I}
5 \]
```

Part V

Math fonts

Typesetting text and math is far different. There exist a lot of free text fonts without additional math characters. This is the reason why we have to buy a commercial math font, e.g. Palatino (`pamath`) or Helvetica (`hvmath`), or to combine the free text font with another free math font.

48 Computer modern

This is the default font, designed by Knuth. For the PDF output the Type 1 fonts `cm-super` and `BlueSky` were used.

Theorem 1 (Residuum). Für eine in einer punktierten Kreisscheibe $D \setminus \{a\}$ analytische Funktion f definiert man das Residuum im Punkt a als

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=a} f(z) = \operatorname{Res}_a f = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(z) dz,$$

wobei $C \subset D \setminus \{a\}$ ein geschlossener Weg mit $n(C, a) = 1$ ist (z.B. ein entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn durchlaufener Kreis).

ΑΛΔ∇BCDEΣΕFGHIJKLMNOΘΩΡΦΠΞQRSTUVWXYZ
 ααββcδdδεεζξζγγhħhııjjkκκλλλmmnηθυοσςφφρρρρqrstτπυμννυωωω
 xχyψz∞ ∝ ∅ ∂ d ð ɐ

49 Latin modern

This is the new designed font which comes with an own Type 1 version. `lm`

Theorem 1 (Residuum). Für eine in einer punktierten Kreisscheibe $D \setminus \{a\}$ analytische Funktion f definiert man das Residuum im Punkt a als

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=a} f(z) = \operatorname{Res}_a f = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(z) dz,$$

wobei $C \subset D \setminus \{a\}$ ein geschlossener Weg mit $n(C, a) = 1$ ist (z.B. ein entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn durchlaufener Kreis).

ΑΛΔ∇BCDEΣΕFGHIJKLMNOΘΩΡΦΠΞQRSTUVWXYZ
 ααββcδdδεεζξζγγhħhııjjkκκλλλmmnηθυοσςφφρρρρqrstτπυμννυωωω
 xχyψz∞ ∝ ∅ ∂ d ð ɐ

50 Palatino

There is a free package `mathpazo.mathpazo`

Theorem 1 (Residuum). Für eine in einer punktierten Kreisscheibe $D \setminus \{a\}$ analytische Funktion f definiert man das Residuum im Punkt a als

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=a} f(z) = \operatorname{Res}_a f = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(z) dz,$$

wobei $C \subset D \setminus \{a\}$ ein geschlossener Weg mit $n(C, a) = 1$ ist (z.B. ein entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn durchlaufener Kreis).

ΑΑΔ∇ΒCDEFGHIJKLMNOPΘΩΡΦΠΞQ RSTUVWXYΥΨΖ
 ααββcδdδeεεfζξgγhηhιiιjκκzλlλmnnηθθoσςφφϕρρρq r s t τ π υ μ ν ν ω ω ω
 xχyψz∞ ∝ ∅ ∅ d d ∅ ∅

51 Palatino – microimp

There is the package `pamath` for the nonfree palatino font.`mathpazo`

Theorem 1 (Residuum). Für eine in einer punktierten Kreisscheibe $D \setminus \{a\}$ analytische Funktion f definiert man das Residuum im Punkt a als

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=a} f(z) = \operatorname{Res}_a f = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(z) dz,$$

wobei $C \subset D \setminus \{a\}$ ein geschlossener Weg mit $n(C, a) = 1$ ist (z.B. ein entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn durchlaufener Kreis).

ΑΑΔ∇ΒCDEFGHIJKLMNOPΘΩΡΦΠΞQ RSTUVWXYΥΨΖ
 ααββcδdδeεεfζξgγhηhιiιjκκκlλlλmnnηθθoσςφφϕρρρq r s t τ π υ μ ν ν ω ω ω
 xχyψz∞ ∝ ∅ ∅ d d ∅ ∅

52 cmbright

Theorem 1 (Residuum). Für eine in einer punktierten Kreisscheibe $D \setminus \{a\}$ analytische Funktion f definiert man das Residuum im Punkt a als

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=a} f(z) = \operatorname{Res}_a f = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(z) dz,$$

wobei $C \subset D \setminus \{a\}$ ein geschlossener Weg mit $n(C, a) = 1$ ist (z.B. ein entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn durchlaufener Kreis).

ΑΛΔ∇BCDΣΕΦΓGHIJKLMNOPΘΩΡΦΠΞQRSTUUVWXYZ

ααββcδdδeεεfζξgγhħιιjκκκlλlmmηθθoσςφφρρρqrstτπυμννvwω

xχγψz∞ ∝ ∅∅dδə

53 minion

Theorem 1 (Residuum). Für eine in einer punktierten Kreisscheibe $D \setminus \{a\}$ analytische Funktion f definiert man das Residuum im Punkt a als

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=a} f(z) = \operatorname{Res}_a f = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(z) dz,$$

wobei $C \subset D \setminus \{a\}$ ein geschlossener Weg mit $n(C, a) = 1$ ist (z.B. ein entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn durchlaufener Kreis).

ΑΛΔ∇BCDΣΕΦΓGHIJKLMNOPΘΩΡΦΠΞQRSTUUVWXYZ

ααββcδdδeεεfζξgγhħιιjκκκlλlmmηθθoσςφφρρρqrstτπυμννvwω

xχγψz∞ ∝ ∅∅dδə

Part VI

Special symbols

In this section only those symbols are defined, which are not part of the list of all available symbols: CTAN://info/symbols/comprehensive/symbols-a4.pdf. With `fontmath.ltx` L^AT_EX itself defines the following special symbols for using inside math:

Name	Meaning
<code>\mathparagraph</code>	¶
<code>\mathsection</code>	§
<code>\mathdollar</code>	\$
<code>\mathsterling</code>	£
<code>\mathunderscore</code>	-
<code>\mathellipsis</code>	...

Table 21: Predefined math symbols from `fontmath.ltx`

54 Integral symbols

Name	Symbol
<code>\dashint</code>	\int
<code>\ddashint</code>	\int
<code>\clockint</code>	\oint
<code>\counterint</code>	\oint

For all new integral symbols limits can be used in the usual way:

$$\int_0^1 1 = \int_1^0 0 < \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} = \oint \oint_A \quad (54.1)$$

```
1 \ddashint_01=\dashint_10<\oint\limits_{-\infty}^{\infty} = \
  clockint\counterint_A
```

Put the following definitions into the preamble to use one or all of these new integral symbols.

```
1 \def\Xint#1{\mathchoice
2   {\XXint\displaystyle\textstyle{#1}}%
3   {\XXint\textstyle\scriptstyle{#1}}%
4   {\XXint\scriptstyle\scriptscriptstyle{#1}}%
5   {\XXint\scriptscriptstyle\scriptscriptstyle{#1}}%
6   \!\int}
7 \def\XXint#1#2#3{\setbox0=\hbox{#1{#2#3}{\int}$}
8   \vcenter{\hbox{#2#3}}\kern-.5\wd0}}
```

```

9 \def\ddashint{\Xint=}
10 \def\dashint{\Xint-}
11 \def\clockint{\Xint\circlearrowright} % GOOD!
12 \def\counterint{\Xint\rotcirclearrowleft} % Good for Computer
    Modern!
13 \def\rotcirclearrowleft{\mathpalette{\RotLSymbol{-30}}\
    circlearrowleft}
14 \def\RotLSymbol#1#2#3{\rotatebox[origin=c]{#1}{\$#2#3$}}

```

55 Harpoons

L^AT_EX knows no stretchable harpoon symbols, like `\xrightarrow`. The following code defines several harpoon symbols.

```

1 \def\rightharpoondownfill@{%
2   \arrowfill@relbar\relbar\rightharpoondown}
3 \def\rightharpoonupfill@{%
4   \arrowfill@relbar\relbar\rightharpoonup}
5 \def\leftharpoondownfill@{%
6   \arrowfill@leftharpoondown\relbar\relbar}
7 \def\leftharpoonupfill@{%
8   \arrowfill@leftharpoonup\relbar\relbar}
9 \newcommand{\xrightarrow}[2][\%
10   \ext@arrow 0359\rightharpoondownfill@{#1}{#2}}
11 \newcommand{\xrightharpoonup}[2][\%
12   \ext@arrow 0359\rightharpoonupfill@{#1}{#2}}
13 \newcommand{\xleftharpoondown}[2][\%
14   \ext@arrow 3095\leftharpoondownfill@{#1}{#2}}
15 \newcommand{\xleftharpoonup}[2][\%
16   \ext@arrow 3095\leftharpoonupfill@{#1}{#2}}
17 \newcommand{\xleftrightharpoons}[2][\mathrel{\%
18   \raise.22ex\hbox{\%
19     $\ext@arrow 3095\leftharpoonupfill@{\phantom
20       {#1}}{#2}$}%
21     \setbox0=\hbox{\%
22       $\ext@arrow 0359\rightharpoondownfill@{#1}{\phantom
23         {#2}}$}%
24     \kern-\wd0 \lower.22ex\box0}%
25   }
26 \newcommand{\xrightleftharpoons}[2][\mathrel{\%
27   \raise.22ex\hbox{\%
28     $\ext@arrow 3095\rightharpoonupfill@{\phantom
29       {#1}}{#2}$}%
30     \setbox0=\hbox{\%
31       $\ext@arrow 0359\leftharpoondownfill@{#1}{\phantom
32         {#2}}$}%
33     \kern-\wd0 \lower.22ex\box0}%
34   }

```

```

\xrightarrow
\xrightharpoondown
\xleftharpoondown
\xleftharpoonup
\xleftrightharpoons
\xrightleftharpoons

```

<code>\xrightarrow[under]{over}</code>	$\xrightarrow[under]{over}$
<code>\xleftarrow[under]{over}</code>	$\xleftarrow[under]{over}$
<code>\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}</code>	$\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}$
<code>\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}</code>	$\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}$
<code>\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}</code>	$\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}$
<code>\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}</code>	$\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}$
<code>\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}</code>	$\xleftrightarrow[under]{over}$

56 Bijective mapping arrow

To get something like \rightsquigarrow we can define:

```

1 \def\bijmap{%
2   \ensuremath{%
3     \mathrel{\rightarrowtail}\rightarrow%
4   }%
5 }
```

This uses the `\mathrel` definition from section 35.2 on page 74. With this definition a huge symbol is also possible: $\Huge\bijmap \rightsquigarrow$.

57 Stacked equal sign

There are several symbols stacked with an equal sign, e.g., `\doteq`, `\equiv` or `\cong` (\doteq , \equiv , \cong). But there are still some missing, which are shown in table 22 and the following definitions.

<code>\eqdef</code>	$\stackrel{\text{def}}{=}$
<code>\eqexcl</code>	$\stackrel{!}{=}$
<code>\eqhat</code>	$\widehat{=}$

Table 22: New symbols in combination with the equal sign

```

1 \newcommand{\eqdef}{\ensuremath{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=}}}
2 \newcommand{\eqexcl}{\ensuremath{\stackrel{!}{=}}}
3 \newcommand{\eqhat}{\ensuremath{\widehat{=}}}
```

58 Other symbols

```

1 \newcommand*{\threesim}{%
2   \mathrel{\vcenter{\offinterlineskip
3     \hbox{$\sim$}\vskip-.35ex\hbox{$\sim$}\vskip-.35ex\hbox{$\sim$}}}
4 $\threesim ABC$

```

 $\approx ABC$

```

1 \newcommand\Let{\mathrel{\mathop:!\!=}}%
   Upper case L!
2 \newcommand\teL{\mathrel{=\!\!=\mathop:}}
3 $x\Let y$ $y\teL x$

```

 $x := y \quad y =: x$

Part VII

Examples

59 Tuning math typesetting

Chapter 18 of the T_EXbook is named „Fine Points of Mathematics Typing“ [12] and it shows on 20 pages some more or less important facts when typesetting mathematical expressions. Often inline formulas contain a punctuation character like a dot, comma, colon, etc.. It is a general rule to write those characters outside the math mode. Compare

a, b, c, d, e , and f

```
1 $a, b, c, d, e, \text{and } f$ \[5pt]
2 $a$, $b$, $c$, $d$, $e$, and $f$
```

a, b, c, d, e , and f

Having such math as single expressions enables T_EX to insert a linebreak at several places (see Section 2.6 on page 13).

Writing an ellipses as three single dots, doesn't look very nice, one should always use the `\ldots` command:

$1, \dots, 10$

```
1 $1, \dots, 10$ \[5pt]
2 $1, \ldots, 10$
```

$1, \dots, 10$

This is correct as long as on the left and right are a comma as a separator. For sums the `\cdots` command should be used instead:

$1 + 2 + \dots + 10$

```
1 $1+2+\cdots+10$ \[5pt]
2 $x_n=x_{n-1}=\cdots=n_0=1$
```

$x_n = x_{n-1} = \dots = n_0 = 1$

For a multiplication it is important which character is used, in european countries often a centered dot. In such a case it is appropriate not to use the `\cdots` command for a ellipsis.

For typesetting integrals or differential equations it makes sense to define the following short macros:

```
1 \newcommand*\dy{\,\mathrm{d}y}
2 \newcommand*\dx{\,\mathrm{d}x}
3 \newcommand*\dyx{\,\mathrm{d}y}{\mathrm{d}x}
4 \newcommand*\ds{\,\mathrm{d}s}
5 \newcommand*\dt{\,\mathrm{d}t}
6 \newcommand*\dst{\,\mathrm{d}s}{\mathrm{d}t}
```

$$F(x) = \int f(x) \, dx$$

$$v(t) = \frac{ds}{dt}$$

$$a(t) = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}$$

```
1 \begin{align*}
2 F(x) &= \int f(x) \, dx \\
3 v(t) &= \ds \\
4 a(t) &= \frac{\mathrm{d}^2s}{\mathrm{d}t^2} \\
5 \end{align*}
```

$$G(t) = \underbrace{\int \cdots \int}_D dx dy \dots$$

$$u_C(t) = \int i_C(t) dt$$

```

1 \begin{align*}
2 G(t) &= \underbrace{\int \cdots \int}_D dx dy \dots \\
3 u_C(t) &= \int i_C(t) dt \\
4 \end{align*}

```

60 Matrix

60.1 Identity matrix

There are several possibilities to write this matrix. Here is a solution with the default array environment.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ & 1 & & 0 & \\ & & 1 & & \\ 0 & & & 1 & \\ & & & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

```

1 \[
2 \left(
3 \begin{array}{ccccc}
4 1 \\
5 & 1 & & \text{\huge{0}} \\
6 & & 1 \\
7 & & & \text{\huge{0}} & & 1 \\
8 & & & & 1 \\
9 \end{array}
10 \right)
11 \]

```

60.2 System of linear equations

$$\begin{array}{rclclcl}
y_1 & = & x_{11} & + & x_{12} & + & x_{13} & + & \dots & + & x_{1(n-1)} & + & x_{1n} \\
y_2 & = & x_{21} & + & x_{22} & + & x_{23} & + & \dots & + & x_{2(n-1)} & + & x_{2n} \\
\vdots & = & \vdots & + & \vdots & + & \vdots & + & \vdots & + & \vdots & + & \vdots \\
y_{n-1} & = & x_{(n-1)1} & + & x_{(n-1)2} & + & x_{(n-1)3} & + & \dots & + & x_{(n-1)(n-1)} & + & x_{(n-1)n} \\
y_n & = & x_{n1} & + & x_{n2} & + & x_{n3} & + & \dots & + & x_{(n-1)(n-1)} & + & x_{nn}
\end{array}$$

```

1 \[
2 \begin{array}{l}
3 y_1 & \& x_{11} & \& x_{12} & \& x_{13} & \& \dots & \& x_{1(n-1)} & \& x_{1n} \\
4 y_2 & \& x_{21} & \& x_{22} & \& x_{23} & \& \dots & \& x_{2(n-1)} & \& x_{2n} \\
5 \vdots & \& \vdots & \& \vdots & \& \vdots & \& \vdots & \& \vdots & \& \vdots \\
6 y_{n-1} & \& x_{(n-1)1} & \& x_{(n-1)2} & \& x_{(n-1)3} & \& \dots & \& x_{(n-1)(n-1)} & \& x_{(n-1)n} \\
7 y_n & \& x_{n1} & \& x_{n2} & \& x_{n3} & \& \dots & \& x_{(n-1)(n-1)} & \& x_{nn} \\
8 \end{array}
9 \]

```


60.3 Matrix with comments on top

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{\textit{text1}} \downarrow & \text{\textit{text1}} \downarrow & \text{\textit{text1}} \downarrow & \text{\textit{text1}} \downarrow \\ \begin{bmatrix} X_x & Y_x & Z_x & T_x \\ X_y & Y_y & Z_y & T_y \\ X_z & Y_z & Z_z & T_z \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$$

```

1 \def\rb#1{\rotatebox{90}{$\xleftarrow{#1}$}}
2 \begin{tabular}{c}
3 $\begin{matrix}
4 \rb{text1}&\rb{text1}&\rb{text1}&\rb{text
5 1}\\
6 \end{matrix}$\\
7 \end{matrix}$\\
8 $\begin{bmatrix}
9 X_x & Y_x & Z_x & T_x \\
10 X_y & Y_y & Z_y & T_y \\
11 X_z & Y_z & Z_z & T_z \\
12 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix}$
\end{tabular}

```

61 Cases structure

Sometimes it is better to use the array environment instead of amsmath's cases environment. To get optimal horizontal spacing for the conditions, there are two matrixes in series, one 3×1 followed by 3×3 matrix. To minimize the horizontal space around the variable z a

```

1 \addtolength{\arraycolsep}{-3pt}

```

is a useful command.

$$I(z) = \delta_0 \begin{cases} D+z & -D \leq z \leq -p \\ D - \frac{1}{2} \left(p - \frac{z^2}{p} \right) & -p \leq z \leq p \\ D-z & p \leq z \leq D \end{cases} \quad (61.1)$$

```

1 \addtolength{\arraycolsep}{-3pt}
2 I(z)=\delta_0\left\{\begin{array}{l}
3 D+z & \quad & -D & \leq z \leq & -p \\
4 D-\frac{1}{2}\left(p-\frac{z^2}{p}\right) & \quad & -p & \leq z \leq & p \\
5 & \quad & & & \\
6 D-z & \quad & p & \leq z \leq & D \end{array}\right.
7 \end{array}
8 \end{equation}

```

The `\phantom` command replaces exactly that place with whitespace which the argument needs.

61.1 Cases with numbered lines

This is not possible in an easy way, because `cases` uses the array environment for typesetting which has by default no numbering. However, there are some tricky ways to get numbered lines. The following three examples use the `tabular`, the `tabularx` and the `array` environment.

$$\text{some text here} \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} x = 2 & \text{if } y > 2 \\ x = 3 & \text{if } y \leq 2 \end{array} \right. \quad \begin{array}{l} (61.2) \\ (61.3) \end{array}$$

```

1 \begin{tabular}{rc}
2 \ldelim\{{2}\}{2.75cm}[some text here] &
3   \parbox{\linewidth-3cm-4\tabcolsep}{
4     \vspace*{1ex}
5     \begin{flalign}
6       x &= 2\quad\text{if } y > 2 &\&\&
7       x &= 3\quad\text{if } y \leq 2 &\&
8     \end{flalign}
9   \end{tabular}

```

$$\text{some text here} \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} x = 2 & \text{if } y > 2 \\ x = 3 & \text{if } y \leq 2 \end{array} \right. \quad \begin{array}{l} (61.4) \\ (61.5) \end{array}$$

```

1 \begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{rXc}
2 \ldelim\{{2}\}{2.75cm}[some text here]
3   & $x=2\quad\text{if } y > 2$ &\refstepcounter{equation}(\theequation)\&
4   & $x=3\quad\text{if } y \leq 2$ &\refstepcounter{equation}(\theequation)
5 \end{tabularx}

```

$$\text{some text here} \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} x = 2 & \text{if } y > 2 \\ x = 3 & \text{if } y \leq 2 \end{array} \right. \quad \begin{array}{l} (61.6) \\ (61.7) \end{array}$$

```

1 \[
2 \begin{array}{rc@{\quad}c}
3 \ldelim\{{2}\}{2.75cm}[some text here]
4   & x = 2\quad\text{if } y > 2 & \refstepcounter{equation}(\theequation)\&
5   & x = 3\quad\text{if } y \leq 2 & \refstepcounter{equation}(\theequation)
6 \end{array}
7 \]

```

62 Arrays

There is a general rule that a lot of mathematical stuff should be divided in smaller pieces. But sometimes it is difficult to get a nice horizontal alignment when splitting a formula. The following ones uses the `array` environment to get a proper alignment.

62.1 Quadratic equation

$$\begin{aligned}
y &= x^2 + bx + c \\
&= x^2 + 2 \cdot \frac{b}{2}x + c \\
&= \underbrace{x^2 + 2 \cdot \frac{b}{2}x + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2}_{\left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2} - \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + c \\
&= \left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + c \quad \left| + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - c \right. \\
y + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - c &= \left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 \quad |(\text{Scheitelpunktform}) \\
y - y_S &= (x - x_S)^2 \\
S(x_S; y_S) \quad \text{bzw.} \quad S\left(-\frac{b}{2}; \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - c\right)
\end{aligned}$$

(62.1)

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \begin{array}{rcll}
3 y & = & x^2 + bx + c \\
4 & = & x^2 + 2 \cdot \frac{b}{2}x + c \\
5 & = & \underbrace{x^2 + 2 \cdot \frac{b}{2}x + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2}_{\left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2} - \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + c \\
6 & = & \left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + c & \left| + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - c \right. \\
7 & & \left(x + \frac{b}{2}\right)^2 & |(\text{Scheitelpunktform}) \\
8 & = & (x - x_S)^2 \\
9 S(x_S; y_S) & \text{bzw.} & S\left(-\frac{b}{2}; \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 - c\right)
\end{array}
\end{equation}

```

62.2 Vectors and matrices

$$\underline{RS} = \begin{pmatrix} 01 & a4 & 55 & 87 & 5a & 58 & db & 9e \\ a4 & 56 & 82 & f3 & 1e & c6 & 68 & e5 \\ 02 & a1 & fc & c1 & 47 & ae & 3d & 19 \\ a4 & 55 & 87 & 5a & 58 & db & 9e & 03 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} s_{i,0} \\ s_{i,1} \\ s_{i,2} \\ s_{i,3} \end{pmatrix} = \underline{RS} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} m_{8i+0} \\ m_{8i+1} \\ \dots \\ m_{8i+6} \\ m_{8i+7} \end{pmatrix} \quad (62.2)$$

$$S_i = \sum_{j=0}^3 s_{i,j} \cdot 2^{8j} \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, k-1$$

$$S = (S_{k-1}, S_{k-2}, \dots, S_1, S_0)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \begin{array}{rccl}
3 \underline{RS} & = & \left( \begin{array}{cccccc}
4 01 & a4 & 55 & 87 & 5a & 58 & db & 9e \\
5 a4 & 56 & 82 & f3 & 1e & c6 & 68 & e5 \\
6 02 & a1 & fc & c1 & 47 & ae & 3d & 19 \\
7 a4 & 55 & 87 & 5a & 58 & db & 9e & 03 \end{array} \right) \\
8 \\
9 \left( \begin{array}{c}
10 s_{i,0} \\
11 s_{i,1} \\
12 s_{i,2} \\
13 s_{i,3} \end{array} \right) & = & \underline{RS} \cdot \begin{pmatrix}
14 m_{8i+0} \\
15 m_{8i+1} \\
16 \dots \\
17 m_{8i+6} \\
18 m_{8i+7} \end{pmatrix} \\
19 \\
20 S_i & = & \sum_{j=0}^3 s_{i,j} \cdot 2^{8j} \quad i=0,1,\dots,k-1 \\
21 \\
22 S & = & \left( S_{k-1}, S_{k-2}, \dots, S_1, S_0 \right) \\
23 \end{array} \\
24 \end{equation}

```

62.3 Cases with (eqn)array environment

This solution is important when $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math can't be used.

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} q^n = \begin{cases} \text{divergent} & q \leq -1 \\ 0 & |q| < 1 \\ 1 & q = 1 \\ \infty & q > 1 \end{cases}$$

```

1 $\lim\limits_{n\rightarrow\infty}q^n=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
2 \text{divergent} \quad q \leq -1 \\
3 0 \quad |q| < 1 \\
4 1 \quad q = 1 \\
5 \infty \quad q > 1
6 \end{array}\right.
7 \end{pre>

```

62.4 Arrays inside arrays

The array environment is a powerful one because it can be nested in several ways:

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc|cc} a_{11} & a_{12} & & & \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & & & \\ \hline & & b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\ & 0 & b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} \\ & & b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{33} \\ \hline & & & & \\ 0 & & 0 & & \begin{array}{cc} c_{11} & c_{12} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} \end{array} \end{array} \right)$$

```

1 \[
2 \left(
3 \begin{array}{c|cc}
4 \begin{array}{cc}
5 a_{11} & a_{12} \\
6 a_{21} & a_{22}
7 \end{array}
8 \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} \\
9 \begin{array}{ccc}
10 b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\
11 b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} \\
12 b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{33}
13 \end{array}
14 \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} \\
15 \begin{array}{cc}
16 c_{11} & c_{12} \\
17 c_{21} & c_{22}
18 \end{array}
19 \end{array}
20 \right)
21 \]
```

$$Y^1 = \frac{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}}{\begin{matrix} 2 & 1 & 3 & 1 \end{matrix}}$$

```

1 \[
2 Y^1=
3 \begin{array}{c}
4 \null\|[1ex] % only vor vertical alignment
5 \left[\begin{array}{rrrr}
6 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
7 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
8 1 & 1 & 1 & 1
9 \end{array}\right]\|[3ex]\hline
10 \begin{array}{rrrr}
11 % \hdotsfor{4} \|[3ex]\hline
12 2 & 1 & 3 & 1
13 \end{array}
14 \end{array}
15 \]
```

62.5 Colored cells

In general there is no difference in coloring tabular or array cells. The following example shows how one can put colors in rows, columns and cells.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc} h_{k,1,0}(n) & h_{k,1,1}(n) & h_{k,1,2}(n) & 0 & 0 \\ h_{k,2,0}(n) & h_{k,2,1}(n) & h_{k,2,2}(n) & 0 & 0 \\ h_{k,3,0}(n) & h_{k,3,1}(n) & h_{k,3,2}(n) & 0 & 0 \\ h_{k,4,0}(n) & h_{k,4,1}(n) & h_{k,4,2}(n) & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & h_{k,1,0}(n-1) & h_{k,1,1}(n-1) & h_{k,1,2}(n-1) & 0 \\ 0 & h_{k,2,0}(n-1) & h_{k,2,1}(n-1) & h_{k,2,2}(n-1) & 0 \\ 0 & h_{k,3,0}(n-1) & h_{k,3,1}(n-1) & h_{k,3,2}(n-1) & 0 \\ 0 & h_{k,4,0}(n-1) & h_{k,4,1}(n-1) & h_{k,4,2}(n-1) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & h_{k,1,0}(n-2) & h_{k,1,1}(n-2) & h_{k,1,2}(n-2) \\ 0 & 0 & h_{k,2,0}(n-2) & h_{k,2,1}(n-2) & h_{k,2,2}(n-2) \\ 0 & 0 & h_{k,3,0}(n-2) & h_{k,3,1}(n-2) & h_{k,3,2}(n-2) \\ 0 & 0 & h_{k,4,0}(n-2) & h_{k,4,1}(n-2) & h_{k,4,2}(n-2) \end{array} \right]_{12 \times 5}$$

```

1 ...
2 \usepackage{array}
3 \usepackage{colortbl}
4 \definecolor{umbra}{rgb}{0.8,0.8,0.5}
5 \def\zero{\multicolumn{1}{>{\columncolor{white}}c}{0}}
6 \def\colCell#1#2{\multicolumn{1}{>{\columncolor{#1}}c}{#2}}
```

```

7 \begin{document}
8 \[\left[\,
9 \begin{array}{*{5}{>{\columncolor[gray]{0.95}}c}}
10 h_{\{k,1,0\}}(n) & h_{\{k,1,1\}}(n) & h_{\{k,1,2\}}(n) & \backslash zero & \backslash zero \\
11 h_{\{k,2,0\}}(n) & h_{\{k,2,1\}}(n) & h_{\{k,2,2\}}(n) & \backslash zero & \backslash zero \\
12 h_{\{k,3,0\}}(n) & h_{\{k,3,1\}}(n) & h_{\{k,3,2\}}(n) & \backslash zero & \backslash zero \\
13 h_{\{k,4,0\}}(n) & \colCell{umbra}{h_{\{k,4,1\}}(n)} & h_{\{k,4,2\}}(n) & \backslash zero & \\
14 & \backslash zero & h_{\{k,1,0\}}(n-1) & h_{\{k,1,1\}}(n-1) & h_{\{k,1,2\}}(n-1) & \backslash zero \\
15 & \backslash zero & h_{\{k,2,0\}}(n-1) & h_{\{k,2,1\}}(n-1) & h_{\{k,2,2\}}(n-1) & \backslash zero \\
16 & \backslash zero & h_{\{k,3,0\}}(n-1) & h_{\{k,3,1\}}(n-1) & h_{\{k,3,2\}}(n-1) & \backslash zero \\
17 & \backslash zero & \colCell{umbra}{h_{\{k,4,0\}}(n-1)} & h_{\{k,4,1\}}(n-1) & h_{\{k,4,2\}}(n-1) & \backslash zero \\
18 & \backslash zero & \backslash zero & h_{\{k,1,0\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,1,1\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,1,2\}}(n-2) \\
19 & \backslash zero & \backslash zero & h_{\{k,2,0\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,2,1\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,2,2\}}(n-2) \\
20 & \backslash zero & \backslash zero & h_{\{k,3,0\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,3,1\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,3,2\}}(n-2) \\
21 & \backslash zero & \backslash zero & h_{\{k,4,0\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,4,1\}}(n-2) & h_{\{k,4,2\}}(n-2) \\
22 \end{array} \backslash, \backslash right]_{12 \times 5} \backslash]
23 ...

```

62.6 Boxed rows and columns

$$\vec{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \boxed{1} & \boxed{2} & \boxed{3} & \boxed{4} \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

```

1 \[
2 \overrightarrow{A}=\left[
3 \begin{array}{cccc}
4 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
5 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
6 \multicolumn{1}{|c}{1} & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
7 \multicolumn{1}{|c}{4} & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
8 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
9 \end{array} \right]
10 \]

```

$$\vec{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & \boxed{3} & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & \boxed{3} & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & \boxed{3} & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & \boxed{3} & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

```

1 \[
2 \overrightarrow{A}=\left[
3 \begin{array}{cccc}
4 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
5 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
6 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
7 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
8 \end{array} \right]
9 \]

```

$$\vec{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & \boxed{3} & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & \boxed{3} & 4 \\ \boxed{1} & \boxed{2} & \boxed{3} & \boxed{4} \\ 1 & 2 & \boxed{3} & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

```

1 \[
2 \overrightarrow{A}=\left[
3 \begin{array}{cccc}
4 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
5 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
6 \multicolumn{1}{|c}{1} & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
7 \multicolumn{1}{|c}{4} & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
8 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\
9 \end{array} \right]
10 \]

```

63 Over- and underbraces

63.1 Braces and roots

To put an underbrace in a root without enlarging the root symbol is possible with the `\makebox` macro:

$$z = \sqrt{\underbrace{x^2 + y^2}_{=z^2}}$$

```

1 \[
2 z = \; \; \; \underbrace{\%
3 \makebox[\widthof{\~$x^2+y^2$}]{r}{\%
4 $\sqrt{x^2+y^2}$}}_{=z^2}
5 \]
```

63.2 Overlapping braces

Overlapping under- and overbraces like $\underbrace{\overbrace{u_1 u_2}^o}$ needs some

tricky code, because we cannot have parts of the argument inside `overbrace` and also `underbrace`. The following equation 63.1 is an example for such a construction:

$$\begin{aligned}
 y &= 2x^2 - 3x + 5 \\
 &= 2 \left(\underbrace{x^2 - \frac{3}{2}x + \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^2}_{=0} - \underbrace{\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^2 + \frac{5}{2}} \right) \\
 &= 2 \left(\underbrace{\left(x - \frac{3}{4}\right)^2} + \frac{31}{16} \right) \\
 y - \frac{31}{8} &= 2 \left(x - \frac{3}{4} \right)^2
 \end{aligned} \tag{63.1}$$

```

1 \begin{align}\label{eq:pqFormel}
2 y &= 2x^2 - 3x + 5 \nonumber \\
3 &\quad \& \hphantom{= } 2 \left( x^2 - \frac{3}{2}x + \left( \frac{3}{4} \right)^2 \right. , x \right. \left. \right. \& \\
4 &\quad \quad \textcolor{blue}{\overbrace{\hphantom{+ \left( \frac{3}{4} \right)^2 - \left( \frac{3}{4} \right)^2 + \frac{5}{2}}}}^{\textcolor{blue}{=0}} \nonumber \\
5 &\quad \quad \quad \left( \frac{3}{4} \right)^2 + \frac{5}{2} \right) \nonumber \\
6 &\quad \&= 2 \left( \textcolor{red}{\underbrace{\left( x - \frac{3}{4} \right)^2}} + \frac{31}{16} \right) \\
7 &\quad \quad \underbrace{\left( x^2 - \frac{3}{2}x + \left( \frac{3}{4} \right)^2 \right. , x \left. \right)}_{=0} \nonumber \\
8 &\quad \quad \quad \left( x - \frac{3}{4} \right)^2 + \frac{31}{16} \right) \\
9 &\quad \quad \quad \left( x - \frac{3}{4} \right)^2 \end{aligned}
```



```

10 }%
11 \underbrace{%
12   - \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^2 + \frac{5}{2}}%
13 \right)\
14 &= 2\left(\quad\textcolor{red}{\left(x-\frac{3}{4}\right)^2}\right.
15 \quad + \quad \frac{31}{16}\quad\left.\textcolor{blue}{\right)}\nonumber\
16 y\textcolor{blue}{\left(-\frac{31}{8}\right)}
17 &= 2\left(x\textcolor{cyan}{\left(-\frac{3}{4}\right)}\right)^2\nonumber
18 \end{align}

```

63.3 Vertical alignment of different braces

When having several braces in one formula line, then it looks better when all braces are also on the same line, e.g.,

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_R \\ y_R \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{r}_{\text{Scaling}} \cdot \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \sin \gamma & -\cos \gamma \\ \cos \gamma & \sin \gamma \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Rotation}} \begin{pmatrix} x_K \\ y_K \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} t_x \\ t_y \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Translation}} \quad (63.2)$$

```

1 \begin{equation}
2 \binom{x_R}{y_R} = \underbrace{r\phantom{\binom{A}{B}}}_{\text{Skaling}}\cdot
3 \underbrace{
4 \begin{pmatrix}
5 \sin \gamma & -\cos \gamma \\
6 \cos \gamma & \sin \gamma
7 \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Rotation}}
8 \binom{x_K}{y_K} +
9 \underbrace{\binom{t_x}{t_y}}_{\text{Translation}}
10
11 \end{equation}

```

It is again the `\vphantom` macro which reserves the needed vertical space. Nevertheless the horizontal space around the `r` of the first underbrace and the last `+` should be decreased to get a better typesetting. This is possible with `\hspace` or simply `\kern`:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_R \\ y_R \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{r}_{\text{Skaling}} \cdot \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \sin \gamma & -\cos \gamma \\ \cos \gamma & \sin \gamma \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Rotation}} \begin{pmatrix} x_K \\ y_K \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} t_x \\ t_y \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Translation}}$$

```

1 \[ \binom{x_R}{y_R} =
2 \kern-10pt\underbrace{r\phantom{\binom{A}{B}}}_{\text{Skaling}}\
3 \kern-10pt\cdot\underbrace{
4 \begin{pmatrix}
5 \sin \gamma & -\cos \gamma \\
6 \cos \gamma & \sin \gamma
7 \end{pmatrix}}_{\text{Rotation}}
8

```

```

9 \binom{x_K}{y_K} +\kern-5pt%
10 \underbrace{\binom{t_x}{t_y}}_{\text{Translation}} \]

```

63.4 Vertical and horizontal alignment

The forgoing example simply uses `\hspace` to decrease the horizontal width between two underbraces. This may be okay for a single solution, but in general it is better to have some code which works in any case.

The following example looks simple but it needs some tricky code to get vertical and horizontal alignment.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \frac{300}{5069} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \frac{29}{490} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \frac{19}{321} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \frac{9}{152} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \frac{8}{135} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \dots & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \frac{1}{16} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \dots & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \frac{1}{1} \\
 \Delta a=271 & & \Delta a=10=\langle 271 \rangle_{29} & & & & \Delta a=1=\langle 10 \rangle_9 & & & & & & \Delta a=0=\langle 1 \rangle_1 & & & & & \\
 \Delta b=4579 & & \Delta b=169=\langle 4579 \rangle_{490} & & & & \Delta b=17=\langle 169 \rangle_{152} & & & & & & \Delta b=1=\langle 17 \rangle_{16} & & & & & \\
 1 \text{ iteration} & & 2 \text{ iterations} & & & & 8 \text{ iterations} & & & & & & 8 \text{ iterations} & & & & &
 \end{array}$$

It uses the macro `\mathclap` defined in section 35.2 on page 74, which gives a better result. It is also possible to use `\makebox[0pt]{...}` but it works only in text mode and this needs some more `$. .$.`

```

1 \def\num#1{\hphantom{#1}}
2 \def\vsp{\vphantom{\rangle_1}}
3
4 \begin{equation*}
5   \frac{300}{5069}%
6   \underbrace{\longmapsto \vphantom{\frac{1}{1}}}_{%
7     \mathclap{\substack{%
8       \Delta a=271\num9\vsp \ll[2pt]
9       \Delta b=4579\vsp \ll[2pt]
10      \text{$1$ iteration}%
11     }}} \frac{29}{490}%
12   \underbrace{\longmapsto \frac{19}{321} \longmapsto}_{%
13     \mathclap{\substack{%
14       \Delta a=10\num9=\langle 271 \rangle_{29}\num{20} \ll[2pt]
15       \Delta b=169=\langle 4579 \rangle_{490} \ll[2pt]
16       \text{$2$ iterations}
17     }}} \frac{9}{152}
18   \underbrace{\longmapsto \frac{8}{135} \longmapsto \dots \longmapsto}_{%
19     \substack{%
20       \Delta a=1\num7=\langle 10 \rangle_9 \num{119} \ll[2pt]
21       \Delta b=17=\langle 169 \rangle_{152} \ll[2pt]
22       \text{$8$ iterations}
23     }} \frac{1}{16}
24   \underbrace{\longmapsto \dots \longmapsto \vphantom{\frac{8}{135}}}_{%
25     \substack{%
26       \Delta a=0=\langle 1 \rangle_1 \num{76} \ll[2pt]
27       \Delta b=1=\langle 17 \rangle_{16} \ll[2pt]

```

```

28      \text{$8$ iterations}
29    }} \frac{1}{1}
30 \end{equation*}

```

64 Integrals

The *first theorem of Green* is:

$$\iiint_G [u \nabla^2 v + (\nabla u, \nabla v)] \, d^3V = \oint_S u \frac{\partial v}{\partial n} \, d^2A$$

The *second theorem of Green* is:

$$\iiint_{\tilde{G}} [u \nabla^2 v - v \nabla^2 u] \, d^3 V = \oint\!\!\!\oint_S \left(u \frac{\partial v}{\partial n} - v \frac{\partial u}{\partial n} \right) d^2 A$$

They are both written with the `esint` package³⁷, which gives nice integral symbols. The L^AT_EX code for the first equation is:

```

1 \[
2 \underset{\mathrm{G}}{\quad}\!\!\!\int\!%
3 \left[u\nabla^2v+\left(\nabla u,\nabla v\right)\right]\mathrm{d}
4 =\underset{\mathrm{S}}{\quad}\!\!\!\oint u\,,\mathrm{Q}\{v\}_{n}\,,\,,\mathrm{d}\sim^2A
5 \]

```

with the following definition in the preamble for the partial derivation:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2}$$

which makes things easier to write.

65 Horizontal alignment

65.1 Over more than one page

Sometimes it may be useful to have a vertical alignment over the whole page with a mix of formulas and text. Section 37 shows the use of `\intertext`. There is another trick to get all formulas vertical aligned. Let's have the following formulas distributed over the whole page:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= a \\ g(x) &= x^2 - 4x \\ f(x) - g(x) &= x^2 + x^3 + x \\ q &= x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + b \end{aligned}$$

³⁷See section 64.

They all have a different length of the left and right side. Now we want to write some text and other objects between them, but let the alignment untouched. We choose the longest left and the longest right side and take them for scaling with the `\hphantom` command:

```
\hphantom{\mbox{$f(x)-g(x)$}} & \hphantom{\mbox{$= x^2+x^3+x^4+x^5+b$}}
```

This is the first (empty) line in every equation where now all other lines are aligned to this one. For example:

blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah
 blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah

$$f(x) = a \tag{65.1}$$

$$g(x) = x^2 - 4x \tag{65.2}$$

blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah
 blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah

$$f(x) - g(x) = x^2 + x^3 + x \tag{65.3}$$

blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah
 blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah

$$g(x) = x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + b \tag{65.4}$$

blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah
 blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah blah

The phantom line is empty but leaves the vertical space for a line. This could be corrected with decreasing the `\abovedisplayshortskip` length and done all inside a group.

```
1 \newcommand{\x}{blah blah blah blah blah blah }
2 \bgroup
3 \addtolength\abovedisplayshortskip{-0.5cm}% decrease the skip
4 \addtolength\abovedisplayshortskip{-0.5cm}
5 \x\x\x
6 \begin{align}
7 \hphantom{\mbox{$f(x)-g(x)$}} & \hphantom{\mbox{$= x^2+x^3+x^4+x^5+b$}}
8 f(x) &= a
9 g(x) &= x^2-4x
10 \end{align}
11 %
12 \x\x\x
```

```

13 \begin{align}
14 \hphantom{\mbox{$f(x)-g(x)$}} & \& \hphantom{\mbox{$= x^2+x^3+x^4+x^5+b$}} \\
15 f(x)-g(x) &= x^2+x^3+x \\
16 \end{align}
17 \x\x\x
18 %
19 \begin{align}
20 \hphantom{\mbox{$f(x)-g(x)$}} & \& \hphantom{\mbox{$= x^2+x^3+x^4+x^5+b$}} \\
21 g(x) &= x^2+x^3+x^4+x^5+b \\
22 \end{align}
23 \x\x\x
24 \egroup

```

Another case of aligning equations inside an itemize environment is the following one. With the `\makebox` macro one can have the same size on the left side of the equal sign to get a vertical alignment.

- first function

$$P_1 = \sum_a \in A$$

- but another one

$$\sin(P_1) = \text{blabla}$$

- or perhaps

$$P_3 + P_2 - P_1 = \text{blablu}$$

```

1 \newsavebox\lW
2 \sbox\lW{$P_{3}+P_{2}-P_{1}$}
3
4 \begin{itemize}
5 \item first function \\\
6   $\displaystyle\makebox[\wd\lW][r]{$P_1$}=\sum_a \in A$
7 \item but another one \\\
8   $\makebox[\wd\lW][r]{$\sin\left(P_1\right)$}=\text{blabla}$
9 \item or perhaps \\\
10  $P_{3}+P_{2}-P_{1}=\text{blablu}$
11 \end{itemize}

```

65.2 Special text columns

This one comes from Hartmut Henkel and offers a special form of placing additional text between the equation and the equation number. This makes only sense when you load the documentclass with the option `fleqn`. The example places the additional text at `0.5\textwidth`, changing this value is no problem.

text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text
 text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text
 text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text
 text text text text text

$$\varepsilon = \frac{E \cdot 4 \cdot \pi \cdot \varepsilon_0 \cdot a_0 \cdot \left(Z_i^{\frac{2}{3}} + Z_{Si}^{\frac{2}{3}} \right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}}{Z_i \cdot Z_{Si} \cdot e^2 \cdot \left(1 + \frac{m_i}{m_{Si}} \right)};$$

a_0	Bohrscher Radius (= 0,53 Å)	(65.5)
e	Elementarladung	
N_{si}	Anzahl der Siliziumatome pro Einheitsvolumen	
m	Atomgewicht	
Z	Kernladungszahl	

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2 \qquad \qquad \qquad abc \qquad \qquad \qquad (65.6)$$

$$z = 9 \qquad \qquad \qquad (65.7)$$

text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text
 text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text
 text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text text
 text text text text text

This solution works only with $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ math, without you have to redefine the \LaTeX macro, which creates the equation number.

```

1 \newsavebox{\myendhook} % for the tabulars
2 \def\tagform@#1{{\maketag@@@{\ignorespaces#1\unskip\@@italiccorr}}
3 \makebox[0pt][r]{% after the equation number
4 \makebox[0.4\textwidth][l]{\usebox{\myendhook}}}%
5 }%
6 \global\sbox{\myendhook}{}% clear box content
7 }}
8 [ ... ]
9 \sbox{\myendhook}{%
10 \begin{footnotesize}%
11 \begin{tabular}{@{}ll}
12 $\a_0$ & Bohrscher Radius ($\mathrm{= 0{,}53\,,\mbox{\AA}}$)\
13 $e$ & Elementarladung\
14 $N_{\mathrm{si}}$ & Anzahl der Siliziumatome\
15 & pro Einheitsvolumen\
16 $m$ & Atomgewicht\
17 $Z$ & Kernladungszahl
18 \end{tabular}
19 \end{footnotesize}}
20 %
21 \begin{equation}
22 \varepsilon = \frac{E \cdot 4 \cdot \pi \cdot \varepsilon_0 \cdot a_0 \cdot \left( Z_i^{\frac{2}{3}} + Z_{Si}^{\frac{2}{3}} \right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}}{Z_i \cdot Z_{Si} \cdot e^2 \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{m_i}{m_{Si}} \right)};
23 \end{equation}
24 
```

```

25 + \frac{m_i}{m_{Si}} \right))\,,;
26 \end{equation}
27 %
28 \sbox{\myendhook}{abc}
29 %
30 \begin{equation} a^2+b^2=c^2 \end{equation}
31 %
32 \begin{equation} z = 9 \end{equation}

```

65.3 Centered vertical dots

By default the vertical dots of `\vdots` are aligned to the left of the `=` symbol and not centered.

$$a_1 = b_1 \qquad c_1 = d_1 \qquad (65.8)$$

$$a_2 = b_2 \qquad c_2 = d_2 \qquad (65.9)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} a & \vdots & b \\ a_n & = & b_n \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} & \vdots & \\ & c_n & = & d_n \end{array} \qquad (65.10)$$

```

1 \usepackage{amsmath}
2 ...
3
4 \newsavebox{\eqbox}
5 \sbox{\eqbox}{\null=\null}
6 \newcommand{\Vdots}{\makebox[\wd\eqbox]{\vdots}}
7
8 \begin{align}
9   a_1 & \& = & b_1 & & c_1 & \& = & d_1 & \\\
10  a_2 & \& = & b_2 & & c_2 & \& = & d_2 & \\\
11  a & \& \Vdots & b & \& & \Vdots & \nonumber & \\\
12  a_n & \& = & b_n & & c_n & \& = & d_n & \\
13 \end{align}

```

66 Node connections

This is a typical application for PSTricks and it needs the package `pst-node` and doesn't work with `pdflatex`. Use `vlatex`, `ps4pdf` or `ps2pdf`.

Die Bindungsenergie im Tröpfchenmodell setzt sich aus folgenden Teilen zusammen:

- dem Oberflächenanteil
- dem Volumenanteil,

$$E = a_v A + -a_f A^{2/3} + -a_c \frac{Z(Z-1)}{A^{1/3}} + -a_s \frac{(A-2Z)^2}{A} + E_p \quad (1)$$

- dem Coulomb-Anteil
- der Symmetrieenergie
- sowie einem Paarbildungsbeitrag.

```

1 \psset{nodesep=3pt}
2 \definecolor{lila}{rgb}{0.6,0.2,0.5}
3 \definecolor{darkyellow}{rgb}{1,0.9,0}
4 Die Bindungsenergie im Tröpfchenmodell setzt sich aus
5 folgenden Teilen zusammen:
6 \begin{itemize}
7 \item dem \rnode{b}{Oberflächenanteil}
8 \item dem \rnode{a}{Volumenanteil},\,[1cm]
9 \def\xstrut{\vphantom{\frac{(A-1)}{(B-1)}}}
10 \begin{equation}
11 E =
12 \rnode[t]{ae}{\psframebox*[fillcolor=darkyellow,
13   linestyle=none]{\xstrut a_v A}} +
14 \rnode[t]{be}{\psframebox*[fillcolor=lightgray,
15   linestyle=none]{\xstrut -a_f A^{2/3}}} +
16 \rnode[t]{ce}{\psframebox*[fillcolor=green,
17   linestyle=none]{\xstrut -a_c \frac{Z(Z-1)}{A^{1/3}}}} +
18 \rnode[t]{de}{\psframebox*[fillcolor=cyan,
19   linestyle=none]{\xstrut -a_s \frac{(A-2Z)^2}{A}}} +
20 \rnode[t]{ee}{\psframebox*[fillcolor=yellow,
21   linestyle=none]{\xstrut E_p}}
22 \end{equation}\,[0.25cm]
23 \item dem \rnode{c}{Coulomb-Anteil}
24 \item der \rnode{d}{Symmetrieenergie}
25 \item sowie einem \rnode{e}{Paarbildungsbeitrag}.
26 \end{itemize}
27 \ncurve[angleA=-90,angleB=90]{->}{a}{ae}
28 \ncurve[angleB=45]{->}{b}{be} \ncurve[angleB=-90]{->}{c}{ce}
29 \ncurve[angleB=-90]{->}{d}{de} \ncurve[angleB=-90]{->}{e}{ee}

```


67 Special placement of displayed equations

67.1 Formulas side by side

Sometimes it may be useful to have numbered formulas side by side like the following ones:

$$\oint E ds = 0 \quad (67.1.a) \quad \nabla \cdot B = 0 \quad (67.1.b)$$

$$a = \frac{c}{d} \quad (67.2.a) \quad b = 1 \quad (67.2.b)$$

$$c = 1 \quad (67.3.a) \quad \int 2x dx = x^2 + C \quad (67.3.b)$$

And again a default display equation:

$$F(x) = \int_0^\infty \frac{1}{x} dx \quad (67.4)$$

```

1 \begin{mtabular}{*{2}{m{0.35\linewidth}m{0.15\linewidth}}}{
2 \begin{align*} \oint E ds=0 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt %
3 & \begin{align*} \nabla \cdot B=0 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt [\label{
   blah}]\
4 \begin{align*} a =\frac{c}{d} \end{align*} & \eqnCnt %
5 & \begin{align*} b = 1 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt\
6 \begin{align*} c =1 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt [\label{blub}]
7 & \begin{align*} \int 2x \, , \mathrm{d}x = x^2+C \end{align*} & \
   eqnCnt
8 \end{mtabular}

```

The new environment `mtabular` has two arguments, one optional and one which is the same as the one from the `tabular` environment. With the option `long` it is possible to have all the formulas in a `longtable` environment, which allows a pagebreak. The new macro `\eqnCnt` controls the counting of these equations as subequations for one tabular line. This macro can have an optional argument for a label. At least it counts the equations. If the equation number is not centered to the foregoing equation, then it needs some more horizontal space in the tabular column.

`\eqnCnt[<optional label>]`

The vertical space is controlled by the length `mtabskip`, which is by default `-1.25cm` and can be modified in the usual way. To define all these macros write into the preamble:

```

1 \usepackage{amsmath}
2 \newcounter{subequation}

```

```

3 \newlength\mtabskip\mtabskip=-1.25cm
4 \newcommand\eqnCnt[1][1]{%
5   \refstepcounter{subequation}%
6   \begin{align}#1\end{align}%
7   \addtocounter{equation}{-1}}
8 \def\mtabLong{long}
9 \makeatletter
10 \newenvironment{mtabular}[2][\empty]{%
11   \def\@xarraycr{%
12     \stepcounter{equation}%
13     \setcounter{subequation}{0}%
14     \@ifnextchar[\@argarraycr{\@argarraycr[\mtabskip]}}
15   \let\theoldequation\theequation%
16   \renewcommand\theequation{\theoldequation.\alph{subequation}}
17   \edef\mtabOption{#1}
18   \setcounter{subequation}{0}%
19   \tabcolsep=0pt
20   \ifx\mtabOption\mtabLong\longtable{#2}\else\tabular{#2}\fi%
21 }{%
22   \ifx\mtabOption\mtabLong\endlongtable\else\endtabular\fi%
23   \let\theequation\theoldequation%
24   \stepcounter{equation}}
25 \makeatother

```

As seen in equation 67.3.a and equation 67.1.b, everything of the table contents is nonsense ... And the following tabular is defined as a longtable to enable pagebreaks.

$$\oint E ds = 0 \quad (67.5.a) \quad \nabla \cdot B = 0 \quad (67.5.b)$$

$$a = \frac{c}{d} \quad (67.6.a) \quad b = 1 \quad (67.6.b)$$

$$c = 1 \quad (67.7.a) \quad \int 2x dx = x^2 + C \quad (67.7.b)$$

$$\oint E ds = 0 \quad (67.8.a) \quad \nabla \cdot B = 0 \quad (67.8.b)$$

$$a = \frac{c}{d} \quad (67.9.a) \quad b = 1 \quad (67.9.b)$$

$$c = 1 \quad (67.10.a) \quad \int 2x dx = x^2 + C \quad (67.10.b)$$

$$\oint E ds = 0 \quad (67.11.a) \quad \nabla \cdot B = 0 \quad (67.11.b)$$

$$a = \frac{c}{d} \quad (67.12.a) \quad b = 1 \quad (67.12.b)$$

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 c = 1 & (67.13.a) & \int 2x \, dx = x^2 + C \quad (67.13.b) \\
 \oint E ds = 0 & (67.14.a) & \nabla \cdot B = 0 \quad (67.14.b) \\
 a = \frac{c}{d} & (67.15.a) & b = 1 \quad (67.15.b) \\
 c = 1 & (67.16.a) & \int 2x \, dx = x^2 + C \quad (67.16.b)
 \end{array}$$

As seen in equation 67.13.a and equation 67.11.b, everything is nonsense ...

And again a default display equation:

$$F(x) = \int_0^\infty \frac{1}{x} dx \quad (67.17)$$

```

1 \begin{mtabular}[long]{*{2}{m{0.375\linewidth}m{0.125\linewidth}}}
2 \begin{align*} \oint E ds=0 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt %
3 & \begin{align*} \nabla \cdot B=0 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt \\
4 \begin{align*} a = \frac{c}{d} \end{align*} & \eqnCnt %
5 & \begin{align*} b = 1 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt \\
6 \begin{align*} c = 1 \end{align*} & \eqnCnt
7 & \begin{align*} \int 2x \, , \mathrm{d}x = x^2 + C \end{align*}
8 & \eqnCnt \\
9 [ ... ]

```

67.2 Formulas inside an itemize enviroment

Without any modification it is not possible to get a numbered equation at the same height as the symbol of the itemize environment. This depends on the `\abovedisplayskip`. The formula has to be raised up for exactly this length.

```

1 \def\itemMath#1{%
2   \raisebox{-\abovedisplayskip}{%
3     \parbox{0.75\linewidth}{%
4       \begin{equation}#1\end{equation}}}%
5 %
6 \begin{itemize}
7 \item \itemMath{ f = 1 }
8 \item \itemMath{ g(x) = \int f(x) \, , \mathrm{d}x }
9 \end{itemize}

```

- $$f = l \quad (67.18)$$

- $$g(x) = \int f(x) dx \quad (67.19)$$

68 Roots

There exists no special symbol for roots which are longer than one line. In such cases the root should be split into two or more one, like $\sqrt{a \cdot b \cdot c} = \sqrt{a} \cdot \sqrt{a} \cdot \sqrt{b} \cdot \sqrt{c}$ if possible. If nothing helps one can use `\overline` for following lines of the root. The following example uses the `multline` environment to get only one equation number:

$$d(P, Q)|_{Stat., Dependent} = \frac{\sqrt{[a_{11}(x_1 - y_1)^2 + a_{22}(x_2 - y_2)^2 + \dots + a_{pp}(x_p - y_p)^2] + [2a_{12}(x_1 - y_1)(x_2 - y_2) + 2a_{13}(x_1 - y_1)(x_3 - y_3) + \dots + 2a_{p-1,p}(x_{p-1} - y_{p-1})(x_p - y_p)]}}{(68.1)}$$

```

1 \begin{multline}
2 d(P,Q)|_{Stat., Dependent}=\backslash
3 \sqrt{\backslashleft[a_{11}(x_{1}-y_{1})^2+a_{22}(x_{2}-y_{2})
4 \ldots+a_{pp}(x_{p}-y_{p})^2\right]+\backslash
5 \overline{\rule{0pt}{2.5ex}
6 \left[2a_{12}(x_{1}-y_{1})(x_{2}-y_{2})+2a_{13}
7 (x_{1}-y_{1})(x_{3}-y_{3})+\right.\backslash
8 \overline{\rule{0pt}{2.5ex}
9 \left.\ldots+2a_{p-1,p}(x_{p-1}-y_{p-1})(x_{p}-y_{p})\right]\backslash
10 \right}}
11 \end{multline}

```

Alternative:

$$d(P, Q)|_{Stat., Dependent} = \left([a_{11}(x_1 - y_1)^2 + a_{22}(x_2 - y_2)^2 + \dots + a_{pp}(x_p - y_p)^2] + [2a_{12}(x_1 - y_1)(x_2 - y_2) + 2a_{13}(x_1 - y_1)(x_3 - y_3) + \dots + 2a_{p-1,p}(x_{p-1} - y_{p-1})(x_p - y_p)] \right)^{1/2} \quad (68.2)$$

```

1 \begin{multline}
2 d(P,Q)|_{\text{Stat.},\text{Dependent}}=\backslash\backslash
3 \left[\left[a_{11}(x_1-y_1)^2+a_{22}(x_2-y_2)^2+\right.
4 \left.\ldots+a_{pp}(x_p-y_p)^2\right]+\right.
5 \left[2a_{12}(x_1-y_1)(x_2-y_2)+2a_{13}\right.
6 \left.(x_1-y_1)(x_3-y_3)+\right.
7 \left.\left.\ldots+2a_{p-1,p}(x_{p-1}-y_{p-1})(x_p-y_p)\right]\right]
8 \end{multline}

```

Part VIII

Lists, bibliography and index

List of Figures

Figure		Page
1	<code>multline</code> Alignment demo (the fourth row is shifted to the right with <code>\shoveright</code>)	61
2	Demonstration of <code>\multlinegap</code> (default is 0pt)	61

List of Tables

Table		Page
1	Meaning of <code>\mathsurround</code>	13
2	Difference between the default <code>\bigg</code> and the <code>\biggm</code> command	28
3	Use of the different parentheses for the “big” commands . . .	28
4	Old font style commands	32
5	Fonts in math mode	33
6	The meaning of the math spaces	33
7	Spaces in math mode	34
8	Math styles	39
9	Dots in math mode	40
10	Accents in math mode	40
11	Vectors with package <code>esvec</code>	43
12	The predefined operators of <code>fontmath.ltx</code>	44
13	The predefined operators of <code>latex.ltx</code>	44
14	The greek letters	46
15	Comparison between the different align environments	52
16	Matrix environments	66
17	binom commands	70
18	The modulo commands and their meaning	71
19	Different mathcommands	81
20	The predefined operators of <code>amsopn.sty</code>	100
21	Predefined math symbols from <code>fontmath.ltx</code>	115
22	New symbols in combination with the equal sign	117

References

- [1] Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn Hargreaves. *T_EX for the Impatient*. <http://tug.org/ftp/tex/impatient/book.pdf>, 2003.
- [2] Claudio Beccari. Typesetting mathematics for science and technology according to iso 31/xi. *TUGboat Journal*, 18(1):39–47, 1997.
- [3] Thierry Bouche. Diversity in math fonts. *TUGboat Journal*, 19(2):121–135, 1998.
- [4] David Cobac. *Atelier documents mathématiques*. <http://dcobac.free.fr/latex/Presentation4.pdf>, 2004.
- [5] David Cobac. *Ecrire des mathématiques avec L^AT_EX*. <http://dcobac.free.fr/latex/prepDocMaths.pdf>, 2004.
- [6] Michael Downes. *Technical Notes on the amsmath package*. American Mathematical Society, <ftp://ftp.ams.org/pub/tex/doc/amsmath/technote.pdf>, 1999.
- [7] Michael Downes. *Short Math Guide for L^AT_EX*. American Mathematical Society, <http://www.ams.org/tex/short-math-guide.html>, 2002.
- [8] Victor Eijkhout. *T_EX by Topic*. <http://www.eijkhout.net/tbt/>, 1992.
- [9] J. Anthony Fitzgerald. *Web Math Formulas Using T_EX*. <http://www.unb.ca/web/Sample/math/>, 1997.
- [10] Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin. *The L^AT_EX Companion*. Addison Wesley, 13 edition, 1994.
- [11] George Grätzer. *Math into L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser Boston, third edition, 2000.
- [12] Donald E. Knuth. *The T_EXbook*. Addison Wesley Professional, 21 edition, 1986.
- [13] Donald E. Knuth, Tracy Larrabee, and Paul M. Roberts. *Mathematical Writing*. Stanford University, Computer Science Department, <http://sunburn.stanford.edu/~knuth/papers/mathwriting.tex.gz>, 1987.
- [14] R. Kuhn, R. Scott, and L. Andreev. *An Introduction to using L^AT_EX in the Harvard Mathematics Department*. Harvard University, Department of Mathematics, <http://abel.math.harvard.edu/computing/latex/manual/texman.html>.

- [15] Johannes Küster. *Designing Math Fonts*.
<http://www.typoma.com/publ/20040430-bachotex.pdf>, apr 2004.
 Vortrag auf der polnischen TeX-Konferenz »BachoTeX«.
- [16] Johannes Küster. *Fonts for Mathematics*.
<http://www.typoma.com/publ/20041002-atypi.pdf>, oct 2004.
 Vortrag auf der ATypI-Konferenz in Prag.
- [17] Richard Lawrence. Math=Typography? *TUGboat Journal*,
 24(2):165–168, 2003.
- [18] NIST. *Typefaces for Symbols in Scientific Manuscripts*.
<http://physics.nist.gov/Document/typefaces.pdf>, 2004.
- [19] Luca Padovani. Mathml formatting with tex rules and tex fonts.
TUGboat Journal, 24(1):53–61, 2003.
- [20] Sebastian Rahtz and Leonor Barroca. A style option for rotated objects
 in L^AT_EX. *TUGboat Journal*, 13(2):156–180, July 1992.
- [21] Steve Seiden. *Math cheat sheet*. TUG,
<http://www.tug.org/texshowcase/#math>, 2000.
- [22] Carole Siegfried and Herbert Voß. Mathematik im Inline-modus. *Die
 T_EXnische Komödie*, 3/04:25–32, November 2004.
- [23] Paul Taylor. *Commutative Diagrams in T_EX*. Department of Computer
 Science, Queen Mary and Westfield College,
<http://www.dcs.qmw.ac.uk/~pt/diagrams/>, 2000.
- [24] Herbert Voß. Farbige Mathematik. *Die T_EXnische Komödie*,
 2/04:81–87, March 2004.
- [25] Herbert Voß. *L^AT_EX in Naturwissenschaften & Mathematik*. Franzis
 Verlag, München, first edition, 2006.

Index

Symbols

$\$, 10, 12, 13$

$\!, 109$

$\langle, 10$

$\rangle, 10$

$\,, 34$

$\:, 34$

$\:, 34$

$\[, 14, 37$

$\], 14, 37$

A

$\above, 92$

$\abovedisplayshortskip, 36$

$\abovedisplayshortskip, 84$

$\abovedisplayskip, 36$

$\abovedisplayskip, 37, 84, 139$

$\abovewithdelims, 93$

$\acute, 40$

$\acute, 40$

$\alignat, 58$

$\aligned, 58$

Alignment

– left, 55

$\allowdisplaybreaks, 46$

$\ArcCos, 103$

$\ArcCot, 103$

$\ArcCsc, 103$

$\ArcSec, 103$

$\ArcSin, 103$

$\ArcTan, 103$

$\array, 57$

$\array, 23, 38, 99–101$

$\arraycolsep, 20, 22$

$\arraystretch, 38$

Arrows, 79

$\atop, 74$

$\atop, 25, 47, 93$

$\atopwithdelims, 93$

B

$\bar, 40$

$\bar, 40$

$\belowdisplayshortskip, 36$

$\belowdisplayshortskip, 84$

$\belowdisplayskip, 36$

$\belowdisplayskip, 37, 84$

$\bf, 32$

$\Big, 27$

$\big, 27$

$\Bigg, 29$

$\Bigg, 27$

$\bigg, 27$

$\Biggm, 27$

$\biggm, 27$

$\Bigl, 27$

$\bigl, 27$

$\Bigm, 27$

$\bigm, 27$

$\bigr, 27$

$\Binom, 47$

$\Binomial, 104$

$\binoppenalty, 96$

$\Bmatrix, 66$

$\bmatrix, 66$

Bold greek letters, 81

$\boldmath, 48$

$\boldmath, 48$

$\boldsymbol, 81$

$\bordermatrix, 23$

$\bordermatrix, 23$

$\boxed, 80$

boxed inline math, 12

Braces, 102

– Problems, 75

$\Braket, 102$

$\breve, 40$

$\breve, 40$

C

$\cal, 32$

$\cancel, 103$

Cases

– numbered lines, 121

`\cases`, 21, 65

`\catcode`, 88

`\cdot`, 119

`\cdots`, 40

`\cdots`, 119

`centertags`, 51

`\cfrac`, 68

`\chapter`, 11, 12

`\check`, 40

`\check`, 40

`\choose`, 47

`\clap`, 75

`cmex10`, 30

`cmr`, 112

`colon`, 119

`Color`, 47

`color`, 126

`\colorbox`, 12

`\columncolor`, 126

`comma`, 35, 119

`Computer modern`, 112

`\cong`, 117

`\Cos`, 103

`\Cot`, 103

`\Csc`, 103

`ctagsplit`, 73

D

`\DblFactorial`, 104

`\ddddot`, 67

`\dddot`, 40, 67

`\dddot`, 40

`\ddot`, 40

`\ddot`, 40

`\ddots`, 40

`decimal point`, 35

`\DeclareMathDelimiter`, 88

`\delcode`, 88

`Delimiter`, 14, 30

`\delimiter`, 88

`\delimiterfactor`, 31, 84

`\delimitershortfall`, 31, 85

`description`, 49

`\dfrac`, 69

`\dfrac`, 11

`differential equation`, 119

`Display math mode`, 10

`\displaybreak`, 46

`displayindent`, 86

`\displayindent`, 85

`\displaylimits`, 93

`displaymath`, 20

`\displaystyle`, 69

`\displaystyle`, 11, 39, 88, 90

`\displaywidowpenalty`, 96

`\displaywidth`, 86

`dot`, 35, 119

`\dot`, 40

`\dot`, 40

`\doteq`, 117

`\dotsb`, 40

`\dotsc`, 40

`\dotsi`, 40

`\dotsm`, 40

`\dotso`, 40

`double stroke`, 32

`dsfont`, 32

E

`ellipses`, 119

`empheq`, 106

`\ensuremath`, 47

Environment

– `array`, 23, 38, 99–101

– `description`, 49

– `displaymath`, 20

– `empheq`, 106

– `eqnarray`, 15, 16, 20, 37, 52, 106

– `equation`, 20, 37

– `gathered`, 109

– `graphicx`, 110

– `lgathered`, 109

– `matrix`, 25

– `tabular`, 21

`\eqdef`, 47

`eqnarray`, 15, 16, 20, 37, 52, 106

`\eqno`, 94

Equation
 – number, 73
 – numbering, 71
 equation, 20, 37
 Equation number, 73
 equation number, 133
 \equiv, 117
 \everydisplay, 50
 \everydisplay, 94
 \everymath, 50
 \everymath, 94
 Exponent, 43
 Extensible arrows, 79

F

\Factorial, 104
 \fam, 89
 \fbox, 12, 19, 106
 \fboxrule, 12
 \fboxsep, 12
 fleqn, 51
 fleqn, 37

Font

– cmex10, 30
 – lm, 112
 fontmath.ltx, 30
 Fontsize, 39
 \frac, 47, 110
 Fraction, 11, 68, 110
 \frac, 68
 Framed inline math, 12

G

\GammaFunc, 104
 gather, 58
 gathered, 58
 gathered, 109
 \genfrac, 68
 \GenIncGamma, 104
 \GenRegIncGamma, 104
 \GenRegIncGammaInv, 104
 graphicx, 110
 \grave, 40
 \grave, 40

Greek, 45
 greek, 46
 – bold, 46
 – upright, 46

H

Harpoon, 116
 \hat, 40
 \hat, 40
 \hcancel, 102
 \hdotsfor, 67
 Helvetica, 112
 \hphantom, 34, 130
 \hphantom, 34, 35
 \hspace, 34
 \Huge, 39
 \huge, 108
 \HurwitzZeta, 104
 \Hypergeometric, 104

I

\imath, 41
 \IncGamma, 104
 Indentation, 55, 85
 Indice, 43
 \int, 11, 44, 108
 Integral, 119
 Integral symbols, 115
 \intertext, 78
 intlimits, 51
 \intop, 44
 \it, 32
 Italic, 31, 76
 \item, 49
 itemize, 139

J

\jmath, 41
 \jot, 37, 38

K

\kern, 34

L

Label, 18

- `\label`, 73
- `\labelwidth`, 85
- `\Large`, 39
- `large`, 39
- Latin modern, 112
- `\ldelim`, 101
- `\ldots`, 40
- `\ldots`, 119
- `\left`, 27, 94, 101
- Left aligned, 56
- Length**
 - `\abovedisplayskip`, 37, 139
 - `\arraycolsep`, 20, 22
 - `\belowdisplayskip`, 37
 - `\delimitershortfall`, 31
 - `\fboxrule`, 12
 - `\fboxsep`, 12
 - `\jot`, 37, 38
 - `\mathsurround`, 13
 - `\topsep`, 37
- `leqno`, 51
- `\leqno`, 94
- `lgathered`, 109
- `\lim`, 11
- Limits, 25, 45, 74, 76
- limits, 11
- `\limits`, 11, 44, 95
- `lm`, 112
- `\LogGamma`, 104
- `longtable`, 138
- M**
- Macro**
 - `\ArcCos`, 103
 - `\ArcCot`, 103
 - `\ArcCsc`, 103
 - `\ArcSec`, 103
 - `\ArcSin`, 103
 - `\ArcTan`, 103
 - `\Biggm`, 27
 - `\Bigl`, 27
 - `\Bigm`, 27
 - `\Binomial`, 104
 - `\Braket`, 102
 - `\Cos`, 103
 - `\Cot`, 103
 - `\Csc`, 103
 - `\DblFactorial`, 104
 - `\DeclareMathDelimiter`, 88
 - `\Factorial`, 104
 - `\GammaFunc`, 104
 - `\GenIncGamma`, 104
 - `\GenRegIncGammaInv`, 104
 - `\GenRegIncGamma`, 104
 - `\Huge`, 39
 - `\HurwitzZeta`, 104
 - `\Hypergeometric`, 104
 - `\IncGamma`, 104
 - `\Large`, 39
 - `\LogGamma`, 104
 - `\MathieuCharacteristicA`, 104
 - `\MathieuCharacteristicB`, 104
 - `\MathieuCharacteristicExponent`, 104
 - `\MathieuCharisticA`, 104
 - `\MathieuCharisticB`, 104
 - `\MathieuCharisticExp`, 104
 - `\MathieuC`, 104
 - `\MathieuS`, 104
 - `\MeijerG`, 104
 - `\Multinomial`, 104
 - `\Pochhammer`, 104
 - `\RegHypergeometric`, 104
 - `\RegIncGammaInv`, 104
 - `\RegIncGamma`, 104
 - `\RiemannSiegelTheta`, 104
 - `\RiemannSiegelZ`, 104
 - `\RiemannZeta`, 104
 - `\Sec`, 103
 - `\Set`, 102
 - `\Sin`, 103
 - `\StieltjesGamma`, 104
 - `\Tan`, 103
 - `\Zeta`, 104
 - `\[`, 14, 37
 - `\]`, 14, 37
 - `\acute`, 40
 - `\allowdisplaybreaks`, 46

- `\arraystretch`, 38
- `\atop`, 25, 47
- `\bar`, 40
- `\biggm`, 27
- `\bigl`, 27
- `\bigm`, 27
- `\bigr`, 27
- `\boldmath`, 48
- `\bordermatrix`, 23
- `\breve`, 40
- `\cancel`, 103
- `\catcode`, 88
- `\cdots`, 119
- `\cdot`, 119
- `\chapter`, 11, 12
- `\check`, 40
- `\choose`, 47
- `\colorbox`, 12
- `\cong`, 117
- `\dddot`, 40
- `\ddot`, 40
- `\delimiterfactor`, 31
- `\dfrac`, 11
- `\displaybreak`, 46
- `\displaystyle`, 11, 39, 90
- `\doteq`, 117
- `\dot`, 40
- `\ensuremath`, 47
- `\eqdef`, 47
- `\equiv`, 117
- `\everydisplay`, 94
- `\fbox`, 12, 19, 106
- `\frac`, 47, 110
- `\grave`, 40
- `\hat`, 40
- `\hcancel`, 102
- `\hphantom`, 34, 35
- `\huge`, 108
- `\imath`, 41
- `\intop`, 44
- `\int`, 11, 44, 108
- `\item`, 49
- `\jmath`, 41
- `\labelwidth`, 85
- `\ldelim`, 101
- `\ldots`, 119
- `\left`, 27, 101
- `\limits`, 11, 44, 95
- `\lim`, 11
- `\makebox`, 26, 133
- `\mathbf`, 49, 101
- `\mathchar`, 90
- `\mathcode`, 88
- `\mathlarger`, 110
- `\mathord`, 36
- `\mathpunct`, 36
- `\mathring`, 40
- `\mathrlap`, 117
- `\mathversion`, 48
- `\mbox`, 31
- `\medmuskip`, 33, 35
- `\nicefrac`, 110
- `\nolimits`, 44
- `\nonumber`, 14–16
- `\ointop`, 44
- `\oint`, 44
- `\overbrace`, 40, 42
- `\overbracket`, 41
- `\overleftarrow`, 40
- `\overleftrightarrow`, 40
- `\overline`, 40
- `\overrightarrow`, 40
- `\overset`, 25
- `\parbox`, 31
- `\part`, 11
- `\pmb`, 45
- `\prod`, 11, 25
- `\rdelim`, 101
- `\right`, 27, 101
- `\scalebox`, 110
- `\scriptscriptstyle`, 39, 90
- `\scriptstyle`, 39, 90
- `\section`, 11, 12, 49
- `\show`, 35
- `\smash`, 26
- `\sqrt`, 26
- `\stackrel`, 46
- `\sum`, 11, 25, 108

- \texorpdfstring, 12
- \textstyle, 31, 39, 90
- \thickmuskip, 33
- \thinmuskip, 33, 35
- \tilde, 40
- \underbar, 40
- \underbrace, 40, 42
- \underbracket, 41
- \underleftarrow, 40
- \underletrightarrow, 40
- \underline, 40
- \underrightarrow, 40
- \underset, 25
- \vec, 40
- \vert, 30
- \vphantom, 26, 101
- \vskip, 38
- \widehat, 40
- \widetilde, 40
- \xymatrix, 110
- \makebox, 26, 133
- \mapstofill, 79
- Math operator, 11
- Math unit, 71
- math unit, 32
- \mathaccent, 89
- \mathbb, 32
- \mathbf, 32
- \mathbf, 49, 101
- \mathbin, 89
- \mathcal, 32
- \mathchar, 89, 90
- \mathchardef, 90
- \mathchoice, 90
- \mathclap, 75, 130
- \mathclose, 90
- \mathcode, 88, 90
- \mathds, 32
- \mathfrak, 32
- Mathieu
 - Characteristics, 104
 - Functions, 104
- \MathieuC, 104
- \MathieuCharacteristicA, 104
- \MathieuCharacteristicB, 104
- \MathieuCharacteristicExponent, 104
- \MathieuCharisticA, 104
- \MathieuCharisticB, 104
- \MathieuCharisticExp, 104
- \MathieuS, 104
- \mathindent, 51
- \mathinner, 95
- \mathit, 32
- \mathlarger, 110
- \mathop, 91
- \mathopen, 91
- mathopen symbol, 27
- \mathord, 36, 91
- \mathpunct, 36, 91
- \mathrel, 91
- \mathring, 40
- \mathring, 40
- \mathrlap, 117
- \mathrm, 32, 77
- \mathsf, 32
- \mathsurround, 13, 86
- \mathtt, 32
- \mathversion, 48
- \mathversion, 48
- \matrix, 66
- matrix, 25
- \mbox, 77
- \mbox, 31
- \medmuskip, 33, 35, 86
- \medspace, 34
- \MeijerG, 104
- \mkern, 86
- \mskip, 86
- \Multinomial, 104
- Multiple exponents, 43
- multiline, 63
- \multlinegap, 61
- \muskip, 87
- \muskipdef, 87

N

- namelimits, 51
- \negmedspace, 34

- `\negthickspace`, 34
- `\negthinspace`, 34
- `\nicefrac`, 110
- `nointlimits`, 51
- `\nolimits`, 44, 95
- `nonamelimits`, 51
- `\nonscript`, 87
- `\nonumber`, 14–16
- `nosumlimits`, 51
- `\nulldelimiterspace`, 87

O

- `\oint`, 44
- `\ointop`, 44
- Operator, 44
- names, 76
- size, 110
- `\operatornamewithlimits`, 76
- `\over`, 95
- `\overbrace`, 40, 128
- `\overbrace`, 40, 42
- `\overbracket`, 41
- `\overleftarrow`, 40
- `\overleftarrow`, 40
- `\overleftrightharrow`, 40
- `\overleftrightharrow`, 40
- `\overline`, 40
- `\overline`, 40, 95, 140
- `\overrightarrow`, 40, 43
- `\overrightarrow`, 40
- `\overset`, 81
- `\overset`, 25
- `\overwithdelims`, 95

P

Package

- accent, 99
- amscd, 99
- amsmath, 92
- amsopn, 99
- amssymb, 35, 40
- bigdelim, 100
- bm, 46, 49, 101
- braket, 30, 101

- calc, 19
- color, 102
- cool, 103
- delarray, 105
- empheq, 107
- esint, 131
- esvect, 43
- eucal, 108
- exscale, 40, 108, 110
- fixltx2e, 11
- hvmath, 112
- hyperref, 12
- icomma, 36
- leqno, 17
- mathpazo, 113
- mathtools, 109
- multirow, 99
- nicefrac, 110
- numprint, 35
- pamath, 112, 113
- pstricks, 99
- relsize, 110
- remreset, 17
- setspace, 38
- units, 110
- upgreek, 46
- wasysym, 107
- xypic, 99, 110
- xy, 110
- Pagebreak, 46
- Palatino, 112, 113
- `\parbox`, 66
- `\parbox`, 31
- `\part`, 11
- `\phantom`, 121
- `\pmatrix`, 66
- `\pmb`, 81
- `\pmb`, 45
- `\Pochhammer`, 104
- Polylogarithm, 104
- `\postdisplaypenalty`, 97
- `\predisplaypenalty`, 97
- `\predisplaystyle`, 87
- `\prod`, 11, 25

punctuation, 119

Q

`\qqquad`, 34

`\quad`, 34

R

`\radical`, 95

`\rdelim`, 101

Reference, 18

`\reflectbox`, 40

`\RegHypergeometric`, 104

`\RegIncGamma`, 104

`\RegIncGammaInv`, 104

`\relpenalty`, 97

`reqno`, 51

`\RiemannSiegelTheta`, 104

`\RiemannSiegelZ`, 104

`\RiemannZeta`, 104

`\right`, 27, 96, 101

`righttag`, 73

`\rm`, 32

Root, 26, 70, 140

`\rowcolor`, 126

S

`\scalebox`, 110

`\scriptfont`, 91

`\scriptscriptfont`, 91

`\scriptscriptstyle`, 39, 90, 92

`\scriptspace`, 87

`scriptstyle`, 11

`\scriptstyle`, 11, 69

`\scriptstyle`, 39, 90, 92

`\Sec`, 103

`\section`, 11, 12, 49

`\Set`, 102

Set symbol, 32

`\shoveright`, 61

`\show`, 35

`\sideset`, 76

`\Sin`, 103

Size

– Operator, 110

`\skew`, 92

`\skewchar`, 92

`\smallmatrix`, 66, 67

`\smash`, 26

Spacing

– vertical, 38

Split equation, 57

`\sqrt`, 26

Stacked limits, 75

`\stackrel`, 46

`\StieltjesGamma`, 104

Style, 39

Subequations, 72

Subscript, 11

subscript, 25

`\substack`, 74, 75, 130

`\sum`, 76

`\sum`, 11, 25, 108

`sumlimits`, 51

Superscript, 11

T

`tabular`, 21

`\tag`, 19

`\Tan`, 103

`tbtags`, 51

`\texorpdfstring`, 12

Text, 31

– `\parbox`, 31

`\textfont`, 92

`\textstyle`, 31, 39, 90, 92

`\tfrac`, 69

`\thickmuskip`, 33, 87

`\thickspace`, 34

`\thinmuskip`, 33, 35, 87

`\thinspace`, 34

`\tilde`, 40

`\tilde`, 40

`\topsep`, 37

`\tt`, 32

U

`\unboldmath`, 48

`\underbar`, 40

`\underbar`, 40

\backslash underbrace, 40, 128, 130
 \backslash underbrace, 40, 42
 \backslash underbracket, 41
 \backslash underleftarrow, 40
 \backslash underleftarrow, 40
 \backslash underlefttriarrow, 40
 \backslash underleftrightharpoon, 40
 \backslash underline, 40, 50
 \backslash underline, 40, 96
 \backslash underrightharpoon, 40
 \backslash underrightharpoon, 40
 \backslash underset, 81, 131
 \backslash underset, 25
 Upright letters, 43
 upright mode, 25
 \backslash uproot, 70

V

\backslash vcenter, 96
 \backslash vdots, 40, 135
 \backslash vec, 40
 \backslash vec, 40
 Vector, 43, 124
 \backslash vert, 30
 Vertical spacing, 38
 \backslash Vmatrix, 66
 \backslash vmatrix, 66
 \backslash vphantom, 130
 \backslash vphantom, 26, 101
 \backslash vskip, 38

W

\backslash widehat, 40
 \backslash widehat, 40
 \backslash widetilde, 40
 \backslash widetilde, 40

X

\backslash xleftharpoonup, 116
 \backslash xleftharpoonup, 116
 \backslash xleftrightharpoons, 116
 \backslash xrightharpoonup, 116
 \backslash xrightharpoonup, 116
 \backslash xrightharpoonup, 116
 \backslash xymatrix, 110

Z

Zeta, 104
 – Functions, 104
 – Hurwitz, 104
 – Riemann, 104
 \backslash Zeta, 104

Appendix

A Filelist

This document was build with

```
1 This is pdfTeXk, Version 3.141592-1.40.3 (Web2C 7.5.6) (format=
  pdflatex 2007.3.18) 21 APR 2007 09:54
```

and with the following file and package versions:

```
1 *File List*
2 article.cls      2005/09/16 v1.4f Standard LaTeX document class
3 size11.clo      2005/09/16 v1.4f Standard LaTeX file (size option)
4 fixltx2e.sty    2006/03/24 v1.1n fixes to LaTeX
5 fontenc.sty
6 t1enc.def       2005/09/27 v1.99g Standard LaTeX file
7 inputenc.sty    2006/05/05 v1.1b Input encoding file
8 latin1.def      2006/05/05 v1.1b Input encoding file
9 ifpdf.sty       2006/02/20 v1.4 Provides the ifpdf switch (H0)
10 ifvtex.sty      2007/01/10 v1.2 Switches for detecting VTeX and its
    modes (H0)
11 comment.sty
12 graphicx.sty    1999/02/16 v1.0f Enhanced LaTeX Graphics (DPC,SPQR)
13 keyval.sty      1999/03/16 v1.13 key=value parser (DPC)
14 graphics.sty    2006/02/20 v1.0o Standard LaTeX Graphics (DPC,SPQR)
15 trig.sty        1999/03/16 v1.09 sin cos tan (DPC)
16 graphics.cfg    2007/01/18 v1.5 graphics configuration of teTeX/
    TeXLive
17 pdftex.def      2007/01/08 v0.04d Graphics/color for pdfTeX
18 varwidth.sty    2003/03/10 ver 0.9a; Variable-width minipages
19 array.sty       2005/08/23 v2.4b Tabular extension package (FMI)
20 delarray.sty    1994/03/14 v1.01 array delimiter package (DPC)
21 tabularx.sty    1999/01/07 v2.07 'tabularx' package (DPC)
22 amsmath.sty     2000/07/18 v2.13 AMS math features
23 amstext.sty     2000/06/29 v2.01
24 amsgen.sty      1999/11/30 v2.0
25 amsbsy.sty      1999/11/29 v1.2d
26 amsopn.sty      1999/12/14 v2.01 operator names
27 amssymb.sty     2002/01/22 v2.2d
28 amsfonts.sty    2001/10/25 v2.2f
29 bm.sty          2004/02/26 v1.1c Bold Symbol Support (DPC/FMI)
30 upgreek.sty     2003/02/12 v2.0 (WaS)
31 cancel.sty      2000/03/12 v2.1 Cancel math terms
32 amscd.sty       1999/11/29 v1.2d
33 accents.sty     2006/05/12 v1.3 Math Accent Tools
34 dsfont.sty      1995/08/01 v0.1 Double stroke roman fonts
35 multirow.sty
36 bigdelim.sty
37 framed.sty      2003/07/21 v 0.8a: framed or shaded text with page
    breaks
38 longtable.sty   2004/02/01 v4.11 Multi-page Table package (DPC)
39 varioref.sty    2006/05/13 v1.4p package for extended references (FMI)
40 xcolor.sty      2007/01/21 v2.11 LaTeX color extensions (UK)
```

41	color.cfg	2007/01/18	v1.5 color configuration of teTeX/TeXLive
42	makeidx.sty	2000/03/29	v1.0m Standard LaTeX package
43	url.sty	2005/06/27	ver 3.2 Verb mode for urls, etc.
44	setspace.sty	2000/12/01	6.7 Contributed and Supported LaTeX2e package
45	empheq.sty	2004/10/10	v2.11a Emphasizing equations (MH)
46	mhsetup.sty	2004/10/10	v1.0b programming setup (MH)
47	mathtools.sty	2004/10/10	v1.01a mathematical typesetting tools (MH)
48	calc.sty	2005/08/06	v4.2 Infix arithmetic (KKT,FJ)
49	nicefrac.sty	1998/08/04	v0.9b Nice fractions
50	ifthen.sty	2001/05/26	v1.1c Standard LaTeX ifthen package (DPC)
51	exscale.sty	1997/06/16	v2.1g Standard LaTeX package exscale
52	relsize.sty	2003/07/04	ver 3.1
53	xspace.sty	2006/05/08	v1.12 Space after command names (DPC,MH)
54	eucal.sty	2001/10/01	v2.2d Euler Script fonts
55	footmisc.sty	2005/03/17	v5.3d a miscellany of footnote facilities
56	esint.sty		
57	esvect.sty		
58	remreset.sty		
59	cool.sty	2006/12/29	v1.35 COntent Oriented LaTeX
60	coollist.sty	2006/08/14	v1 COntent Oriented LaTeX Lists
61	coolstr.sty	2007/01/08	v2.1 COntent Oriented LaTeX Strings
62	forloop.sty	2006/09/18	v3.0 For Loops for LaTeX
63	bbm.sty	1999/03/15	V 1.2 provides fonts for set symbols - TH
64	xypic.sty	1999/02/16	Xy-pic version 3.7
65	xy.sty		
66	fancyhdr.sty		
67	showexpl.sty	2007/02/03	v0.3h Typesetting example code (RN)
68	listings.sty	2004/10/17	1.3b (Carsten Heinz)
69	lstpatch.sty	2004/10/17	1.3b (Carsten Heinz)
70	lstmisc.sty	2004/09/07	1.3 (Carsten Heinz)
71	listings.cfg	2004/09/05	1.3 listings configuration
72	lstmisc.sty	2004/09/07	1.3 (Carsten Heinz)
73	showexpl.cfg	2005/06/30	v0.02 Definitions for the showexpl package (hv)
74	lstlang1.sty	2004/09/05	1.3 listings language file
75	lstlang2.sty	2004/09/05	1.3 listings language file
76	lstlang3.sty	2004/09/05	1.3 listings language file
77	lstmisc.sty	2004/09/07	1.3 (Carsten Heinz)
78	microtype.sty	2007/01/21	v2.0 Micro-typography with pdfTeX (RS)
79	microtype.cfg	2007/01/14	v2.0 microtype main configuration file (RS)
80	hyperref.sty	2007/02/07	v6.75r Hypertext links for LaTeX
81	pdlenc.def	2007/02/07	v6.75r Hyperref: PDFDocEncoding definition (H0)
82	hyperref.cfg	2002/06/06	v1.2 hyperref configuration of TeXLive
83	kvoptions.sty	2006/08/22	v2.4 Connects package keyval with LaTeX options (H0)
84	hpdftex.def	2007/02/07	v6.75r Hyperref driver for pdfTeX
85	hycap.sty	2006/02/20	v1.5 Adjusting anchors of captions (H0)
86	babel.sty	2005/11/23	v3.8h The Babel package
87	english.ldf	2005/03/30	v3.3o English support from the babel system
88	braket.sty		
89	supp-pdf.tex		

```

90  mt-cmr.cfg      2005/11/07 v1.9 microtype config. file: Computer
      Modern Roman (RS)
91  nameref.sty    2006/12/27 v2.28 Cross-referencing by name of section
92  refcount.sty   2006/02/20 v3.0 Data extraction from references (H0)
93  Mathmode.out
94  Mathmode.tex
95      umsa.fd      2002/01/19 v2.2g AMS font definitions
96  mt-msa.cfg     2006/02/04 v1.1 microtype config. file: AMS symbols (a
      ) (RS)
97      umsb.fd      2002/01/19 v2.2g AMS font definitions
98  mt-msb.cfg     2005/06/01 v1.0 microtype config. file: AMS symbols (b
      ) (RS)
99  mt-eur.cfg     2006/07/31 v1.1 microtype config. file: AMS Euler
      Roman (RS)
100  uesint.fd
101  uesvect.fd
102  t1cmtt.fd      1999/05/25 v2.5h Standard LaTeX font definitions
103  omscmr.fd      1999/05/25 v2.5h Standard LaTeX font definitions
104  t1cmss.fd      1999/05/25 v2.5h Standard LaTeX font definitions
105  Mathmode.bbl
106  Mathmode.ind
107  *****

```